

THANH HẰNG

BÀI TẬP TIẾNG ANH THEO TỪNG UNIT

(Chương trình thí điểm)

**LỚP
8**

Có đáp án



- ★ Tóm tắt những chủ điểm ngữ pháp cần thiết cho học sinh lớp 8.
- ★ Bài tập ngữ pháp bám sát nội dung trong sách giáo khoa.
- ★ Đa dạng về cách thức làm bài, bao gồm cả trắc nghiệm và tự luận giúp các em học sinh đào sâu kiến thức và kỹ năng làm bài của mình.

TỦ SÁCH LUYỆN THI

UNIT 1 (E8)

adore (v)	/ə'dɔː/	Yêu thích, mê thích	detest (v)	/dɪ'test/	ghét
addicted (adj)	/ə'dɪktɪd/	nghiện (thích) cái gì	DIY (n)	/,di: aɪ 'waɪ/	đồ tự làm, tự sửa
beach game (n)	/bi:tʃgeɪm/	Trò thể thao trên bãi biển	don't mind (v)	/dəʊntmaɪnd/	Không ngại, Không ghét lắm
bracelet (n)	/'breɪslət/	Vòng đeo tay	hang out (v)	/hæŋaʊt/	Đi chơi với bạn bè
communicate (v) communication (n) communicative (adj)	/kə'mjuː.nɪkeɪt/	Giao tiếp(v) (n) (adj)	hooked (adj)	/hʊkt/	Yêu thích cái gì
Communitycentre (n)	/kə'mjuː.nəti 'sentə/	Trung tâm văn hoá cộng đồng	It's right up mystreet! (idiom)		Đúng vị của tớ!
craft (n)	/kra:ft/	đồ thủ công	join (v)	/dʒɔɪn/	Tham gia
craft kit (n)	/kra:ftkɪt/	bộ dụng cụ làm thủ công	leisure (n)	/'leɪzə/	sự thư giãn nghỉ ngơi
cultural event (n)	/'kʌltʃərəlɪ'vent/	sự kiện văn hoá	leisure activity (n)	/'leɪzəæk'tɪvə ti/	hoạt động thư giãn nghỉ ngơi
netlingo (n)	/net'ɪŋɡəʊ/	Ngôn ngữ dùng để giao tiếp trên mạng	leisure time (n)	/'leɪzətəɪm/	thời gian thư giãn nghỉ ngơi
people watching (n)	/'pi:plwɒtʃɪŋ/	ngắm người qua lại	relax (v) relaxation (n)	/rɪ'læks/	Thư giãn (v) (n)
satisfied (adj) satisfaction (n) satisfy (v)	/'sætɪsfɑɪd/	Hài lòng (adj) (n) sự hài lòng (v) làm hài lòng	socialise (v)	/'səʊʃəlaɪz/	Giao tiếp để tạo mối quan hệ
weird (adj)	/wɪəd/	Kì cục	window shopping (n)	/'wɪndəʊ 'ʃɒpɪŋ/	Đi ngắm đồ bày ở cửa hàng
virtual (adj)	/'vɜːtʃuəl/	ảo (chicó ở trên mạng)			

PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

1. A. sound B. cloud C. found D. favourite
2. A. tool B. noon C. door D, school
3. A. know B. show C. now D. low
4. A. crafts B. comics C. streets D. stamps
5. A. mentions B, questions C. action D. education
6. A. prize B. drill C. brick D. trim
7. A. broom B. proof C. blood D. troop
8. A. practice B. cracker C. tractor D. bracelet
9. A. trophy B. problem C. broccoli D. drop
10. A. trunk B. prudential C. brush D. crush

II. Put the words in the box into two groups

Proud	Breath	Break	Bracelet	Practice
Brown	Pray	Brush	Appropriate	Pretty

/br/	/pr/

GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY

I. Complete the sentences in Mai's email with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

Hi, Susan!

Well, I'm here in Ha Noi, now. I see quite a lot of my cousin Hoa because we (1) (enjoy/ do) _____ the same things. I have some new friends called David and John. David is very good at computers and he (2) (not mind/ help) _____ me so that's good. John is really nice too. He (3) (play) _____ basketball and he (4) (go/ skateboard) _____ quite a lot. His brother Toby is 18 and he's really cool but he (5) (prefer/ play) _____

_____football. I (6) (do_____gymnastics once a week and Hoa (7) (do) _____karate. She prefers indoor sports because she (8) (not like/ get)_____cold!

Write soon!

II. Choose the correct option A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Mai enjoys_____to music, especially pop music in her free time.
A. hearing B. playing C. listening D. taking
2. My grandparents love_____very much. There are a lot of beautiful flowers and fresh vegetables in their garden.
A. doing garden B. doing gardening C. do gardening D. to do garden
3. You should avoid_____too much TV. It's not good for your eyes.
A. seeing B. looking C. watching D. glancing
4. Nga likes_____with her close friend on Saturday evenings. She feels relaxing.
A. window shop B. window to shop C. window shops D. window shopping
5. Lan used to love_____in front of the computer for hours but now she doesn't. she takes part in a judo club.
A. using B. sitting C. doing D. having
6. Minh is very hard-working boy. He doesn't mind_____a lot of homework in the evenings.
A. making B. reading C. seeing D. doing
7. Do you fancy_____around the West Lake with me this Sunday morning?
A. going B. having C. staying D. moving
8. I don't like_____up early in the winter days. I love_____in bed late.
A. getting/ stay B. get/ stay C. getting/ staying D. get/ staying
9. Mai's dad likes_____spring rolls when her family has parties.
A. doing B. making C. cooking D. trying
10. Why don't we_____our parents with some DIY projects? I think it's useful.
A. help B. do C. make D. give

READING

I. Read the following paragraph and complete it with one suitable word.

Millions of teenagers enjoy (1)_____video games. Some play them at home. Others play them in arcades. These games are good fun (2)_____players must be careful.

Teenagers should not spend much time on these games (3)_____they can become tired, dizzy and even obese. If they use computer too much, they won't have time for their families and friends. People who are addicted to computer games don't like to join any clubs or plays any sports. They like (4)___ in front of the computer all the time. One doctor says, " This is very bad for your people. They must take part in activities with others. All young people should play outdoors and develop their social skills. They should be with people of their own age. They should spend only a small part of their time playing video (5)____.they mustn't forget to do other things too.

II. Choose the correct word A, B, or C for each gap to complete the following passage.

I go on the Internet every day, but I've never (1)_____more than an hour at a time online. I've got a laptop and also smartphone, so I can (2)_____ the Internet everywhere. Today, for instance, I've been (3)_____three times. Mainly I just (4)_____ my friends. I read online magazines and I look (5)_____ information, too. I also compare prices of things, (6)___ I've never bought anything online because I don't think it's safe.

I'm not an Internet addict, but some of my friends (7)_____. One friend of mine always looks (8)_____because he spends all night online. Although he's got a lot of bad marks for the exams, he hasn't (9)_____ his habits.

In my experience, it is very useful for people who use the Internet (10)_____.

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. spend | B. spending | C. spent |
| 2. A. have | B. use | C. play |
| 3. A. online | B. Internet | C. computer |
| 4. A. write | B. email | C. send |
| 5. A. at | B. in | C. for |
| 6. A. because | B. but | C. happily |
| 7. A. is | B. were | C. are |
| 8. A. tired | B. hard | C. happily |
| 9. A. change | B. to change | C. changed |
| 10. A. sensible | B. sensibly | C. sensibleness |

III. Read the passage about British and American teenagers, and answer the questions:

Sport: In the UK, football, rugby, tennis and basketball are the most popular sports for teenagers. In the USA, American football, athletics, basketball and baseball are popular.

The Internet and television: Teenagers in both the UK and the USA today watch television less than before but they use the Internet more. They spend over 25 hours a week online.

Pocket money and shopping: The average teenager in the UK gets about £7 a week pocket money. In the USA it is about \$10. They spend their money on clothes and going out, but magazines, presents and snacks are so important.

Friends: The average British and American teenager has seven close friends. He or she has sixteen online friends on social network websites.

1. Which sports do British and American teenagers play in their free time?

2. How long do they spend online?

3. How much pocket money do they get?

4. What do they spend it on?

5. How many online friends do they have?

WRITING

I. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given

1. Internet/ change/ way/ we/ communicate.

2. I/ email/ my/ pen pal/ Australia.

3. Do/ think/ spending/ you/ much/ too/ time/ is/ the/ on/ Internet/ harmful?

4. Are/ sides/ the/ positive/ and/ negative/ what/ of/ the/ Internet/?

5. Internet/ the/ useful/ is/, / but/ also/ it's/ a/ place/ dangerous/.

II. Rearrange the sentences to make a suitable text about the research finding, “ Teens who use social media too much have lower grades and how to solve it” by writing the correct number (1-10) in each blank.

_____A. One 2010 study showed that only 37% of “heavy” media users had grades lower than the average, while 35% of “light” social users were lower in average grades.

_____B. Other studies have found a negative relationship between social media usage and overall Grade Point Average (GPA).

_____C. But does too much time social networking harm students’ schoolwork?

_____D. One small girl said that checking text message and Facebook on her smartphone was the biggest obstacle to her homework.

_____E. Several studies have showed opposite results.

_____F. Some students are turning on software such as “Block Facebook” to block certain websites on their computers, and allow them to have only certain amounts of time on Facebook so that they can focus on homework.

_____G. Social networking can help connect people with friends, give people the chance to share pictures online, and help people communicate easily.

_____H. One study stated that “sending text message and using Facebook while doing homework were bad for overall GPA”.

_____I. According to Facebook in 2016 there are over 618 million active users per day, and over a billion active users per month.

_____J. In this study, there was no relation between an excess of social media and a below average grades.

III. Write a paragraph about the topic: “ Whether parents help children with social network”, using the cues given.

1. There/ both/ many good things/ many potential dangers/ social network.
2. It/ important for parents/ teach/ their children/ how use/ social media wisely.
3. Social network/ be/ start of bad things/ like cyber bullying.
4. Recent reports/ say/ many teenagers/ have/ online contact/ strangers/ and/ it/ make/ them/ feel scared or uncomfortable.
5. Others/ receive/ online advertising/ that/ be/ inappropriate for their age.
6. It/ be/ important/ parents/ be/ aware of/ what/ children/ doing online.
7. Parents/ make/ children/ understand that/ they respect/ children’s privacy.
8. However/ parents/ want/ make sure/ children/ be safe.

TEST 1

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined

1. A. leisure B. eight C. celebrate D. penalty
2. A. fun B. sun C. surf D. cut
3. A. bracelet B. cake C. take D. hat
4. A. although B. laugh C. paragraph D. enough
5. A. comedy B. novel C. princess D. cinema

II. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. I like cooking in my free time. It makes me feel_____.	RELAX
2. My sister doesn't like surfing the Internet, she says it is_____.	BORE
3. Skateboarding is her hobby. It is also one of the most _____ sports of the teenagers in this town.	POPULARITY
4. My close friend gave me a_____present on my birthday. I like it so much.	WONDER
5. My brother works as a volunteer for an animal protection_____. He really loves his job.	ORGANIZE

III. Fill each blank with a word/ phrase in the box.

Melodies	Leisure time	Making crafts	Doing	Skateboarding
Leisure activities	The most	Comics	Reading	

1. Nick has just bought a CD of Vietnamese folk song and he thinks he'll enjoy listening to the_____.
2. While Nick was learning Japanese, he liked_____Doraemon.
3. My friends gave me some interesting short stories on my birthday because they know that I like reading_____.
4. Tam lives near the coast of Da Nang so he likes playing beach_____with his friends after school.
5. Hobbies such as collecting stamps or_____are very interesting.
6. How much_____do people in the US have on average day?
7. Minh hates_____the same thing everyday.
8. What are the three activities that pupils in Viet Nam do_____in their free time?
9. How much time a day do you spend on_____, Phuc?

10. Which activity do you like best , football, badminton or_____?

IV. Read the article and choose the best answer

LEISURE IN BRITAIN

The British spend their free time in different ways. People generally use it to relax but many people also (1)_____voluntary work, especially for charities.

People spend a lot of their free time in the home, where the (2)_____popular leisure activity is watching television, the average viewing time being 25 hours a week. People often (3) _____programs on videos so that they can watch later, and video recorders are also used (4) _____watching videos hired from a video rental shop.

Reading is also favourite way of spending leisure time. The British spend a lot of time reading newspapers and magazines. In the summer gardening is popular, and in winter it is often replaced by “do – it – yourself”, (5)_____people spend their time improving or repairing their homes. Many people have pets to look after; taking the dog for a daily walk is a regular routine.

The extra leisure time (6)_____at weekends means that some leisure activities, many of them to do with sport, normally (7)_____place only then. Traditional spectator sports include football, cricket, horse racing, motor racing and motor cycle racing. Popular forms of (8)_____are swimming, tennis, ice-skating or roller skating, cycling, climbing, and hill or country walking.

Families often have a “day out” at the weekend, especially in summer, with a (9) _____to a local event such as a festival, fair or show. Young people especially go to clubs and discos, while people of all (10)_go to the theatre, the cinema, art exhibitions and concerts.

1. A. make B. do C. play D. go
2. A. many B. more C. much D. most
3. A. record B. scan C. print D. power
4. A. with B. for C. on D. about
5. A. what B. why C. when D. while
6. A. available B. probable C. abundant D. exclusive
7. A. dragB. bring C. carry D. take
8. A. strength B. exercise C. athletics D. presentation
9. A. voyage B. journey C. visit D. road

10. A. ages B. numbers C. years D. groups

V. Read the passage carefully, and do the tasks that follow.

Task 1. Match the heading (A-E) to the paragraph (1-5)

- A. No computers for two days.
- B. Never again!
- C. Homework wasn't as easy.
- D. I used my phone more.
- E. I didn't want to listen to them talking!

No computer day! How did you survive?

☐ **1. Ben, Luton, UK**

It was very difficult. I had quite a lot of homework to do. Usually, I use the computer to find information and I write my essay on it. My dad has lots of books, atlases and reference books, but almost all of them are out of date. It wasn't difficult to find information, but it took more time.

☐ **2. Jenny, Des Moines, USA**

I didn't have email contact with my friends. I hate it! I sent a lot of texts. A few of my friends also turned off their computers, but most of them didn't. On Sunday, there were lots of emails to read.

☐ **3. David, Los Angeles, USA**

I usually listen to sports on the Internet on Saturdays. I can listen to baseball from anywhere in the USA or football from Europe. I listened to my mum's small kitchen radio. It was awful. There was no football at all. I won't join in the next "no computer" day.

☐ **4. Sara, Richmond, UK**

My main problem was music. The batteries in my MP3 player were flat. I don't have a DVD player – only on my computer – so I listened to the radio. It wasn't very good. A few DJs are OK, but most of them talk too much.

☐ **5. Lisa, Swansea, Wales**

I read a lot. My mum has some good books. It was very relaxing. Usually my eyes hurt in the evening. Last Saturday, there were fine. I went to bed earlier, too. The next day, I didn't turn on my computer at all. I wanted to finish my book.

Task 2: Match the words/ phrases (6 – 10) with their meanings (F-J). Write the answer in each blank.

_____ 6. Survive (v)	F. a device giving electricity
_____ 7. Atlas (n)	G. continue to live
_____ 8. Out of date (a)	H. a book of maps
_____ 9. Battery (n)	I. not working
_____ 10. Flat (a)	J. no longer used

VI. Rewrite the following sentences so that their meaning stays the same, using the words given.

1. He uses all his free time to look after his garden. (spends)
2. He likes to listen to pop music than to watch TV after school. (prefers)
3. Making crafts or collecting things like stamps and coins are very interesting. (It's)
4. We usually visit museums when we have leisure time. (enjoy)
5. I don't like to get up early and prepare breakfast in the cold winter days. (hate)
6. Vinh really loves to hang out with friends. (enjoys)
7. Playing beach games is very interesting. (it is)
8. It is not a good idea to spend too much time on computer games. (better to avoid)
9. My parents insist me on learning something interesting. (wants)
10. Jenny finds reading poetry boring. (dislikes)

VI. Use the suggestions below to write a short paragraph of around 100 words about the benefits of playing sports for children.

- Topic sentence: Benefits of playing sports
- Supporting idea 1: Playing sports is fun and exciting
- Supporting idea 2: Playing sports keep kids strong, fit and healthy
- Supporting idea 3: sports help develop teamwork and leadership skills
- Concluding sentence: children should play sports

KEY

UNIT 1

PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

1. A. sound B. cloud C. found D. favourite

2. A. tool B. noon C. door D. school
3. A. know B. show C. now D. low
4. A. crafts B. comics C. streets D. stamps
5. A. mentions B. questions C. action D. education
6. A. prize B. drill C. brick D. trim
7. A. broom B. proof C. blood D. troop
8. A. practice B. cracker C. tractor D. bracelet
9. A. trophy B. problem C. broccoli D. drop
10. A. trunk B. prudential C. brush D. crush

II. Put the words in the box into two groups

Proud	Breath	Break	Bracelet	Practice
Brown	Pray	Brush	Appropriate	Pretty

/br/	/pr/
Breath	Proud
Break	Practice
Bracelet	Pray
Brown	Appropriate
Brush	Pretty

GRAMMAR& VOCABULARY

I. Complete the sentences in Mai's email with the correct form of the verb in brackets.

Hi, Susan!

Well, I'm here in Ha Noi, now. I see quite a lot of my cousin Hoa because we (1) (enjoy/ do) _ENJOY DOING_ the same things. I have some new friends called David and John. David is very good at computers and he (2) (not mind/ help) _DOESN'T MIND HELPING_ me so that's good. John is really nice too. He (3) (play) _PLAYS_ basketball and he (4) (go/ skateboard) _GOES

SKATEBOARDING _____ quite a lot. His brother Toby is 18 and he's really cool but he (5) (prefer/ play) PREFERS TO PLAY football. I (6) (do) DO gymnastics once a week and Hoa (7) (do) DOES karate. She prefers indoor sports because she (8) (not like/ get) DOESN'T LIKE GETTING cold! Write soon!

II. Choose the correct option A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- Mai enjoys _____ to music, especially pop music in her free time.
A. hearing B. playing **C. listening** D. taking
- My grandparents love _____ very much. There are a lot of beautiful flowers and fresh vegetables in their garden.
A. doing garden **B. doing gardening** C. do gardening D. to do garden
- You should avoid _____ too much TV. It's not good for your eyes.
A. seeing B. looking **C. watching** D. glancing
- Nga likes _____ with her close friend on Saturday evenings. She feels relaxing.
A. window shop B. window to shop C. window shops **D. window shopping**
- Lan used to love _____ in front of the computer for hours but now she doesn't. she takes part in a judo club.
A. using **B. sitting** C. doing D. having
- Minh is very hard-working boy. He doesn't mind _____ a lot of homework in the evenings.
A. making B. reading C. seeing **D. doing**
- Do you fancy _____ around the West Lake with me this Sunday morning?
A. going B. having C. staying D. moving
- I don't like _____ up early in the winter days. I love _____ in bed late.
A. getting/ stay B. get/ stay **C. getting/ staying** D. get/ staying
- Mai's dad likes _____ spring rolls when her family has parties.
A. doing **B. making** C. cooking D. trying
- Why don't we _____ our parents with some DIY projects? I think it's useful.
A. help B. do C. make D. give

READING

I. Read the following paragraph and complete it with one suitable word.

Millions of teenagers enjoy (1)playing video games. Some play them at home. Others play them in arcades. These games are good fun (2) but players must be careful. Teenagers should not spend much time on these games (3) because they can become tired, dizzy and even obese. If they use computer too much, they won't have time for their families and friends. People who are addicted to computer games don't like to join any clubs or plays any sports. They like (4) sitting in front of the computer all the time. One doctor says, " This is very bad for your people. They must take part in activities with others. All young people should play outdoors and develop their social skills. They should be with people of their own age. They should spend only a small part of their time playing video (5)games .They mustn't forget to do other things too.

II. Choose the correct word A, B, or C for each gap to complete the following passage.

I go on the Internet every day, but I've never (1) more than an hour at a time online. I've got a laptop and also smartphone, so I can (2) the Internet everywhere. Today, for instance, I've been (3) three times.

Mainly I just (4) my friends. I read online magazines and I look (5) information, too. I also compare prices of things, (6) I've never bought anything online because I don't think it's safe.

I'm not an Internet addict, but some of my friends (7) . One friend of mine always looks (8) because he spends all night online. Although he's got a lot of bad marks for the exams, he hasn't (9) his habits.

In my experience, it is very useful for people who use the Internet (10).

- | | | |
|-----------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. spend | B. spending | C. spent |
| 2. A. have | B. use | C. play |
| 3. A. online | B. Internet | C. computer |
| 4. A. write | B. email | C. send |
| 5. A. at | B. in | C. for |
| 6. A. because | B. but | C. happily |
| 7. A. is | B. were | C. are |
| 8. A. tired | B. hard | C. happily |
| 9. A. change | B. to change | C. changed |
| 10. A. sensible | B. sensibly | C. sensibleness |

III. Read the passage about British and American teenagers, and answer the questions:

Sport: In the UK, football, rugby, tennis and basketball are the most popular sports for teenagers. In the USA, American football, athletics, basketball and baseball are popular.

The Internet and television: Teenagers in both the UK and the USA today watch television less than before but they use the Internet more. They spend over 25 hours a week online.

Pocket money and shopping: The average teenager in the UK gets about £7 a week pocket money. In the USA it is about \$10. They spend their money on clothes and going out, but magazines, presents and snacks are so important.

Friends: The average British and American teenager has seven close friends. He or she has sixteen online friends on social network websites.

1. Which sports do British and American teenagers play in their free time?

In the UK they play football, rugby, tennis and basketball, while in the USA they play American football, athletics, basketball and baseball.

2. How long do they spend online?

They spend over 25 hours a week online.

3. How much pocket money do they get?

The average teenager in the UK gets about £7 a week pocket money. In the USA it is about \$10.

4. What do they spend it on?

They spend their money on clothes and going out, but magazines, presents and snacks are also important.

5. How many online friends do they have?

They have sixteen online friends.

WRITING

I. Make up sentences using the words and phrases' given

1. Internet/ change/ way/ we/ communicate.

Internet has changed the way we communicate.

2. I/ email/ my/ pen pal/ Australia.

I've emailed my pen pal in Australia.

3. Do/ think/ spending/ you/ much/ too/ time/ is/ the/ on/ Internet/ harmful?

Do you think spending too much time on the Internet is harmful?

4. Are/ sides/ the/ positive/ and/ negative/ what/ of/ the/ Internet/?

What are the positive and negative sides of the Internet?

5. Internet/ the/ useful/ is/, / but/ also/ it's/ a/ place/ dangerous/.

The Internet is useful, but It's also a dangerous place.

II. Rearrange the sentences to make a suitable text about the research finding, “ Teens who use social media too much have lower grades and how to solve it” by writing the correct number (1-10) in each blank.

___5___A. One 2010 study showed that only 37% of “heavy” media users had grades lower than the average, while 35% of “light” social users were lower in average grades.

___7___B. Other studies have found a negative relationship between social media usage and overall Grade Point Average (GPA).

___3___C. But does too much time social networking harm students’ schoolwork?

___9___D. One small girl said that checking text message and Facebook on her smartphone was the biggest obstacle to her homework.

___4___E. Several studies have showed opposite results.

___10___F. Some students are turning on software such as “Block Facebook” to block certain websites on their computers, and allow them to have only certain amounts of time on Facebook so that they can focus on homework.

___1___G. Social networking can help connect people with friends, give people the chance to share pictures online, and help people communicate easily.

___8___H. One study stated that “sending text message and using Facebook while doing homework were bad for overall GPA”.

___2___I. According to Facebook in 2016 there are over 618 million active users per day, and over a billion active users per month.

___6___J. In this study, there was no relation between an excess of social media and a below average grades.

III. Write a paragraph about the topic: “ Whether parents help children with social network”, using the cues given.

1. There/ both/ many good things/ many potential dangers/ social network.

There are both many good things and many potential dangers about social media.

2. It/ important for parents/ teach/ their children/ how use/ social media wisely.

It is important for parents to teach their children how to use social media wisely.

3. Social network/ be/ start of bad things/ like cyber bullying.

Social network can be the start of bad things like cyber bullying.

4. Recent reports/ say/ many teenagers/ have/ online contact/ strangers/ and/ it/ make/ them/ feel scared or uncomfortable.

The recent reports about the matter say that many teenagers have online contact with strangers and it makes them feel scared or uncomfortable.

5. Others/ receive/ online advertising/ that/ be/ inappropriate for their age.

Others have received online advertising that was inappropriate for their age.

6. It/ be/ important/ parents/ be/ aware of/ what/ children/ doing online.

It is important for parents to be aware of what their children are doing online.

7. Parents/ make/ children/ understand that/ they respect/ children's privacy.

Parents should make their children understand that they respect their children's privacy.

8. However/ parents/ want/ make sure/ children/ be safe.

However, parents want to make sure that their children are safe.

KEY TEST 1

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------|-----------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. le <u>is</u> ure | B. e <u>igh</u> t | C. ce <u>le</u> brate | D. pe <u>n</u> alty |
| 2. A. fu <u>n</u> | B. su <u>n</u> | C. su <u>r</u> f | D. cu <u>t</u> |
| 3. A. br <u>a</u> celet | B. c <u>a</u> ke | C. t <u>a</u> ke | D. h <u>a</u> t |
| 4. A. al <u>th</u> ough | B. lau <u>gh</u> | C. para <u>gr</u> aph | D. enou <u>gh</u> |
| 5. A. com <u>e</u> dy | B. nove <u>l</u> | C. prin <u>ce</u> ss | D. cine <u>m</u> a |

II. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. I like cooking in my free time. It makes me feel_____.	RELAXED
2. My sister doesn't like surfing the Internet, she says it is_____.	BORING
3. Skateboarding is her hobby. It is also one of the most _____ sports of the teenagers in this town.	POPULAR
4. My close friend gave me a_____present on my birthday. I like it so much.	WONDERFUL
5. My brother works as a volunteer for an animal protection_____. He really loves his job.	ORGANIZATION

III. Fill each blank with a word/ phrase in the box.

1 Melodies	6 Leisure time	5 Making crafts	7 Doing	10 Skateboarding
9 Leisure activities	8 The most	3 Comics	2 Reading	4 Games

- Nick has just bought a CD of Vietnamese folk song and he thinks he'll enjoy listening to the_____.
- While Nick was learning Japanese, he liked_____Doraemon.
- My friends gave me some interesting short stories on my birthday because they know that I like reading_____.
- Tam lives near the coast of Da Nang so he likes playing beach_____with his friends after school.
- Hobbies such as collecting stamps or_____are very interesting.
- How much_____do people in the US have on average day?
- Minh hates_____the same thing everyday.
- What are the three activities that pupils in Viet Nam do_____in their free time?
- How much time a day do you spend on_____, Phuc?
- Which activity do you like best , football, badminton or_____?

IV. Read the article and choose the best answer

LEISURE IN BRITAIN

The British spend their free time in different ways. People generally use it to relax but many people also (1)_____voluntary work, especially for charities.

People spend a lot of their free time in the home, where the (2)_____popular leisure activity is watching television, the average viewing time being 25 hours a week. People often (3) _____programs on videos so that they can watch later, and video recorders are also used (4) _____watching videos hired from a video rental shop.

Reading is also favourite way of spending leisure time. The British spend a lot of time reading newspapers and magazines. In the summer gardening is popular, and in winter it is often replaced by “do – it – yourself”, (5)_____people spend their time improving or repairing their homes. Many people have pets to look after; taking the dog for a daily walk is a regular routine.

The extra leisure time (6)_____at weekends means that some leisure activities, many of them to do with sport, normally (7)_____place only then. Traditional spectator

sports include football, cricket, horse racing, motor racing and motor cycle racing. Popular forms of (8)_____are swimming, tennis, ice-skating or roller skating, cycling, climbing, and hill or country walking.

Families often have a “day out” at the weekend, especially in summer, with a (9) _____to a local event such as a festival, fair or show. Young people especially go to clubs and discos, while people of all (10)_go to the theatre, the cinema, art exhibitions and concerts.

1. A. make **B. do** C. play D. go
2. A. many B. more C. much **D. most**
3. **A. record** B. scan C. print D. power
4. A. with **B. for** C. on D. about
5. A. what B. why **C. when** D. while
6. **A. available** B. probable C. abundant D. exclusive
7. A. drag B. bring C. carry **D. take**
8. A. strength **B. exercise** C. athletics D. presentation
9. A. voyage B. journey **C. visit** D. road
10. **A. ages** B. numbers C. years D. groups

V. Read the passage carefully, and do the tasks that follow.

Task 1. Match the heading (A-E) to the paragraph (1-5)

- A. No computers for two days.**
- B. Never again!**
- C. Homework wasn't as easy.**
- D. I used my phone more.**
- E. I didn't want to listen to them talking!**

C

1. Ben, Luton, UK

It was very difficult. I had quite a lot of homework to do. Usually, I use the computer to find information and I write my essay on it. My dad has lots of books, atlases and reference books, but almost all of them are out of date. It wasn't difficult to find information, but it took more time.

D

2. Jenny, Des Moines, USA

I didn't have email contact with my friends. I hate it! I sent a lot of texts. A few of my

friends also turned off their computers, but most of them didn't. On Sunday, there were lots of emails to read.

B 3. David, Los Angeles, USA

I usually listen to sports on the Internet on Saturdays. I can listen to baseball from anywhere in the USA or football from Europe. I listened to my mum's small kitchen radio. It was awful. There was no football at all. I won't join in the next "no computer" day.

E 4. Sara, Richmond, UK

My main problem was music. The batteries in my MP3 player were flat. I don't have a DVD player – only on my computer – so I listened to the radio. It wasn't very good. A few DJs are OK, but most of them talk too much.

A 5. Lisa, Swansea, Wales

I read a lot. My mum has some good books. It was very relaxing. Usually my eyes hurt in the evening. Last Saturday, there were fine. I went to bed earlier, too. The next day, I didn't turn on my computer at all. I wanted to finish my book.

Task 2: Match the words/ phrases (6 – 10) with their meanings (F-J). Write the answer in each blank.

___G___ 6. Survive (v)

F. a device giving electricity

___H___ 7. Atlas (n)

G. continue to live

___J___ 8. Out of date (a)

H. a book of maps

___F___ 9. Battery (n)

I. not working

___I___ 10. Flat (a)

J. no longer used

VI. Rewrite the following sentences so that their meaning stays the same, using the words given.

1. He uses all his free time to look after his garden. (spends)

He spends all his free time looking after his garden.

2. He likes to listen to pop music than to watch TV after school. (prefers)

He prefers listening to pop music to watching TV after school.

3. Making crafts or collecting things like stamps and coins are very interesting. (It's)

It's very interesting to make crafts or collect things like stamps and coins.

4. We usually visit museums when we have leisure time. (enjoy)

We enjoy visiting museums when we have leisure time.

5. I don't like to get up early and prepare breakfast in the cold winter days. (hate)
I hate getting up early and preparing breakfast in the cold winter day .
6. Vinh really loves to hang out with friends. (enjoys)
Vinh really enjoys hanging out with friends.
7. Playing beach games is very interesting. (it is)
It is very interesting to play beach games.
8. It is not a good idea to spend too much time on computer games. (better to avoid)
It is better to avoid spending too much time on computer games.
9. My parents insist me on learning something interesting. (wants)
My parents want me to learn something interesting
10. Jenny finds reading poetry boring. (dislikes)
Jenny dislikes reading poetry.

Playing sports offers children physical and social benefits. First of all, playing sports is fun and exciting. It gives kids something to do and a group to belong to. Secondly, being active by playing sports is going to keep kids strong, fit and healthy. Growing bodies need lots of daily exercise and the best way to do this is to play sports. In addition, sports help develop teamwork and leadership skills. Kids quickly learn that they have to work together as a team to win the game. In short, it is obvious that all children should play sports. It helps them make new friends, keep fit and healthy, and learn how to work with others. (115 words)

UNIT 2 (E8)

LIFE IN THE COUNTRYSIDE

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

countryside	(n)	/'kʌntrisaɪd/	<i>nông thôn</i>	tent	(n)	/tent/	<i>lều</i>
herd	(v)	/hɜːd/	<i>chăn dắt</i>	pole	(n)	/pəʊl/	<i>cọc lều</i>
buffalo	(n)	/'bʌfələʊ/	<i>trâu</i>	camel	(n)	/'kæml/	<i>lạc đà</i>
transport	(v)	/'trænspɔːt/	<i>vận chuyển</i>	cattle	(n)	/'kætl/	<i>gia súc</i>
harvest time	(n,v)	/'hɑːvɪst taɪm/	<i>mùa gặt</i>	vast	(adj)	/vɑːst/	<i>rộng lớn, bát ngát</i>
ride	(v)	/raɪd/	<i>lái, cưỡi</i>	Peaceful	(adj)	/'piːsfl/	<i>yên bình</i>

				Peace (n)	(n)		hòa bình
Collect	(v)	/kə'lekt/	<i>Gom, sưu tập</i>	nomadic	(adj)	/nəʊ'mædɪk/	<i>thuộc về du mục</i>
Collection (n)	(n)		<i>Sự sưu tập</i>				
Collector (n)	(n)		<i>Người sưu tập</i>				
dry	(v)	/draɪ/	<i>làm khô</i>	nomad	(n)	/'nəʊmæd/	<i>dân du mục</i>
load	(v)	/ləʊd/	<i>tải, chất lên</i>	Brave	(adj)	/breɪv/	<i>can đảm</i>
				Bravery	(n)		<i>sự can đảm</i>
buffalo-drawn cart	(n)	/ˈbʌfələʊ - /drɔːnka:t/	<i>xe trâu kéo</i>	put up	(n)	/pʊtʌp/	<i>xây, lắp đặt</i>
colourful	(adj)	/ˈkʌləfl/	<i>sặc sỡ, có màu sắc</i>	blossom	(n,v)	/ˈblɒsəm/	<i>hoa, ra hoa</i>
paddy field	(n)	/ˈpædi fiːld/	<i>đồng lúa</i>	clay	(n)	/kleɪ/	<i>đất sét</i>
hay	(n)	/heɪ/	<i>cỏ khô</i>	adult	(n)	/ˈædʌlt/	<i>người lớn</i>
grow up	(v)	/grəʊ ʌp/	<i>lớn lên</i>	offer	(v)	/ˈɒfə(r)/	<i>đưa ra</i>
opportunity	(n)	/ˌɒpəˈtjuːnəti	<i>cơ hội</i>	access to St	(n)	/ˈækses/	<i>Sự tiếp cận</i>
				access st	(v)		<i>Tiếp cận</i>
facility	(n)	/fəˈsɪləti/	<i>tiện nghi</i>	Crowded	(adj)	/ˈkraʊdɪd/	<i>đông đúc</i>
				Crowd	(n)		<i>đám đông</i>
folk	(n)	/fəʊk/	<i>người (dùng với động từ ở số nhiều)</i>	Safe	(adj)	/seɪf/	<i>an toàn</i>
				Safety	(n)		<i>sự an toàn</i>
Traditionally	(adv)	/trəˈdɪʃənəli/	<i>một cách truyền thống</i>	soundly	(adv)	/ˈsaʊndli/	<i>hoàn toàn và đầy đủ</i>
Tradition	(n)		<i>truyền thống</i>				
			<i>truyền thống</i>				
generously	(adv)	/ˈdʒenərəsli/	<i>một cách hào phóng</i>	Healthily	(adv)	/ˈhelθɪli/	<i>Một cách có lợi</i>
				Healthy	(adj)		<i>cho sức khỏe</i>
				Healthy	(n)		
milk	(n,v)	/mɪlk/	<i>sữa, vắt sữa</i>	optimistic	(adj)	/ˌɒptɪˈmɪstɪk/	<i>lạc quan</i>
densely populated	(adj)	/ˈdensliˈpɒp juleɪtɪd/	<i>đông dân</i>	optimistically	(adv)	/ˌɒptɪˈmɪstɪkli/	<i>một cách lạc quan</i>
Mongolia	(n)	/mɒŋˈɡəʊliə /	<i>Mông Cổ</i>	medical help	(adj)	/ˈmedɪkl help/	<i>trợ giúp y tế</i>
obtain	(v)	/əbˈteɪn/	<i>đạt được</i>	plough	(n, v)	/pləʊ/	<i>cày, cái cày</i>
beehive	(n)	/ˈbiːhaɪv/	<i>tổ ong</i>	Entertainment	(n)	/ˌentəˈteɪnmənt/	<i>giải trí</i>

				Entertain Entertaining	(v) (adj)		
electricity	(n)	/ɪˌlekˈtrɪsəti/	điện	Freedom free	(n) (adj)	/ˈfriːdəm/	tự do
unforgettable	(adj)	/ˌʌnfəˈgetəbl/	đáng nhớ	Urbanization Urban (adj)	(n) (adj)	/ˌɜːbənaɪˈzeɪʃn/	sự đô thị hoá thuộc về đô thị
pasture	(n)	/ˈpɑːstʃə(r)/	đồng cỏ	Inconvenient Convenient Convenience	(adj) (adj) (n)	/ˌɪnkənˈviːniənt/	không thuận tiện thuận tiện sự thuận tiện
grassland	(n)	/ˈgrɑːslænd/	đồng cỏ	dairy	(adj)	/ˈdeəri/	bơ, sữa
household chore	(n)	/tʃɔː(r)/	việc nhà	electrical appliance		/ɪˈlektɹɪkləˈplaɪəns/	đồ điện
surround	(v)	/səˈraʊnd/	bao quanh	ger	(n)	/ger/	lều của dân du mục Mông Cổ
highlands	(n)	/ˈhaɪləndz/	Cao nguyên	racing motorist	(n)	/ˈreɪsɪŋ ˈməʊtərɪst/	người lái ô tô đua
local	(n, adj)	/ˈləʊkl/	địa phương, dân địa phương				

II. Grammar: Comparative forms of adverbs

* S + V + short Adv + “er” + (than)

E.g: Let's run faster.

* S + V + more/ less + long Adv + (than)

E.g: Can you walk more slowly?

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|--------------------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. c <u>oun</u> try | B. cl <u>ou</u> d | C. l <u>ou</u> dly | D. m <u>ou</u> se |
| 2. A. c <u>a</u> mel | B. c <u>a</u> ttle | C. p <u>a</u> ddy | D. bu <u>ff</u> alo |
| 3. A. popu <u>l</u> ated | B. lo <u>a</u> ded | C. har <u>v</u> ested | D. l <u>i</u> ved |
| 4. A. f <u>i</u> elds | B. fl <u>o</u> wers | C. l <u>e</u> mons | D. p <u>a</u> rks |
| 5. A. n <u>o</u> rmal | B. v <u>i</u> sitor | C. t <u>r</u> ans <u>p</u> ort | D. ch <u>o</u> re |

II. Put the words in the box into two groups.

block	climb	clip	black	blue
blow	blossom	cloud	clue	clap

/b/	/cl/
-----	-----
-----	-----
-----	-----
-----	-----
-----	-----

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. People in my country are very open and..... I like to go there when I have free time. **(friend)**
2. Some of my live in the countryside. **(relate)**
3. Some people say that the country is more for the people who are retired. **(suit)**
4. Entertainment is difficult to find in the country, in the evening. **(particular)**
5. Natural disasters can.....destroy a harvest and leave the farmers with little or no money until the following year. **(easy)**

IV. Use the adjectives or adverbs in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.

1. Minh says life in the countryside is he expected. He'll go there whenever he has free time. **(interesting)**
2. My brother is studying at a university in Ha Noi. He often says he loves living in our village because people here are.....people in Ha Noi. **(friendly)**
3. Last week we went to Sa Pa. It'sto look at the paddy fields on mountain slopes than the paddy fields on the lowlands. **(wonderful)**
4. My grandparents often tell us that they used to live in a life than it is now. **(hard)**

5. Living in the countryside is andliving in big cities.
(peaceful, quiet)
6. The cost of living in my town isin this area. **(expensive)**
7. Living in modern blocks of flats is other places. You can buy everything you want just on the ground floor. **(convenient)**
8. City children havelife than the country children. **(exciting)**
9. He is a famous athlete so of course he runs me. **(fast)**
10. My grandfather says that farmers in the past worked.....farmers nowadays. **(hard)**

V. Fill each blank with a word/ phrase in the box.

rice	countryside	herding	buffalo	busiest time
harvest time	buffalo-drawn carts	colourful	fantastic	noisier than

1. At the, my brother always helps my parents load the rice onto the truck and drives it home.
2. I often help my parents dry the.....in the yard in front of my house.
3. Some farmers in my village still use to transport rice home.
4. He usually goesthe buffaloes with other boys in his village.
5. My pen pal friend says he would like to visit my at harvest time to see what farmers do.
6. My friend has never ridden aso he would like to try once.
7. Harvest time is the.....of the year in the countryside.
8. Our garden is in spring when almost flowers bloom.
9. I like looking at the stars on starry nights. It's
10. My uncle lives in the city. He says it'smy village.

VI. Read the following paragraph and complete it with one suitable word in each blank.

My grandmother told me that our village (1).....very poor many years ago. The villagers had to work hard in the fields all day but they could not earn enough for their living. Their lives were very simple. Many people had to (2) in houses made of straw and mud.

Nowadays my village has (3) a lot. People live in big brick houses. In the evening, they can listen to the (4) on the radio or watch TV for entertainment. All people in my village try their best to make their living better. They raise and resurface the roads (5) the roads will not be muddy and flooded after it rains. They widen the roads so cars and lorries can get to the village easily. They build a medical centre so people's health can be looked (6).....at any time. They build a new school so their (7) have better learning conditions. They build a bridge (8) the river so villagers have a shorter way to town. They also build a football ground so their children can (9) sports. In addition, they grown cash crops so people can export the crops and have more money.

I would like to become an agricultural engineer in the future so I can apply new technology to our farming and do more for the village (10)..... our parents did.

VII. Read the text and answer the questions below.

Last week Nick and some of his classmates went to the countryside. They went to visit a farm of Nick's uncle.

They left early in the morning and went there by bus. Nick's uncle, Mr. Brown met them at the bus stop and took them to his farm. On the way. Uncle Brown showed them the field of wheat and vegetables where some tractors were running up and down, ploughing and breaking soil, distributing manure and planting potatoes.

After lunch, they all went for a walk. In the large yard of the farm, they saw some farm machines. Among them is the biggest machine which is called a combine harvester. They were told that this machine can cut and thresh corn at the same time.

In the afternoon, they went to the place where cattle such as horses, sheep and cows were raised. They were very excited to see how cows were milked by the workers there. Uncle Brown also spoke about many interesting things in the countryside. After having some fruits and cakes, they said goodbye and went home.

1. How did Peter and his classmates go to Uncle Brown's farm?

.....

.

2. What does his uncle grow on his farm?

.....
.
3. What can a tractor do?
.....
.

4. What is typical of a combine harvester?
.....
.

5. Which kinds of cattle are raised in Uncle Brown's farm?
.....
.

VIII. Choose the correct word A, B, C or D for each gap to complete the following passage.

My parents are farmers. They work very (1) on the paddy fields. They usually get (2) very early in the morning. After (3) breakfast, they feed the buffaloes, pigs, chickens, ducks and they (4) the eggs. From about eight, they work on the fields. They (5) rice but their main (6) is vegetables. From eleven thirty to one thirty, they rest and have lunch. They continue to work until five in the afternoon, then they come back home. My mother (7) the animals again while my father (8) the buffalo shed and the chicken coop. They usually finish their work at about six thirty. Twice a week, my mother (9) the vegetables and eggs to the town market to sell them then she often buys the things we need for our daily life. She also (10) me a small present each time.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|------------|
| 1. A. hard | B. hardly | C. harder | D. hardest |
| 2. A. on | B. off | C. up | D. in |
| 3. A. to have | B. having | C. have | D. had |
| 4. A. take | B. see | C. have | D. collect |
| 5. A. plant | B. water | C. grow | D. cut |
| 6. A. period | B. crop | C. time | D. harvest |
| 7. A. leads | B. feeds | C. gives | D. calls |
| 8. A. cleans | B. washes | C. polishes | D. clears |

9. A. makes B. takes C. carries D. brings
 10. A. buying B. buys C. to buy D. bought

IX. Find and correct ten mistakes in this passage.

Last summer, Tuan invited me go to his village in Thai Binh Province with his father.	1.
It's harvest time, so all people there were very busy. The villagers got up very early and go to the fields to cut rice, loaded it onto buffalo-drawn carts or tractors and drove it home. Tuan helped his parents on the farm work. Tuan and I followed his father to go to the fields. There was so many space and I love the vast open space, the fresh air and the feel of freedom in the countryside. We could run around the fields and shout out loudly without disturbing anybody. I have never saw any interesting place like this. In the afternoon, some of Tuan's cousins take us to the fields to fly kites – It's was so exciting!	2. 3. 4.
The next morning, Tuan and I went to the market with his grandmother. There were many interesting thing there. Locals sold their home-made products and many fresh fruits such as bananas, oranges, apples and they also sold animals such as chickens, geese, ducks, cats, dogs and pigs. I enjoyed the atmosphere there.	5. 6. 7.
The trip to the countryside gave me my first experience of farm work: cutting rice, dry rice, planting vegetables, collecting potatoes. It's really unforgettable!	8. 9. 10.

X. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

Example: countryside/ children/ more/ freely/ city.

->In the countryside, children play more freely than in the city.

1. can/ you/ speak/ more/ slowly/ so/ I/ can/ understand/ you/?

2. Tet/ our house/ beautifully/ decorated/ than/ during/ year/.

.....

3. homes/ city/ often/ better/ equipped/ with/ electrical appliances/ those/ countryside/.

.....

4. nowadays/ more/ villagers/ use/ motorcycles/ for/ transport/ instead/ riding/ horse/ walking/.

.....

.....

5. thanks/ TV/ Internet/ people/ my/ village/ have/ more/ fun/ and/ know/ more/ life/ outside/ village/.

.....

.....

XI. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their original meanings. Use the right comparative forms of the adverbs in brackets.

1. Hung drives more carefully than his brother. (**carefully**)

Hung's brother

2. The laboratory in my school is now better equipped than some years ago. (**badly**)

Some years ago the laboratory

3. Nam works more lazily so he often gets worse marks than Quang. (**hard, good**)

Quang works

4. Trung drives more carefully than Minh so he has rarely had an accident. (**carelessly**)

Minh drives

5. Going by taxi is faster than going by bus but it costs more than a bus. (**slow, little**)

Going by bus

.....

ANSWER KEYS

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

1. A. country

B. cloud

C. loudly

D. mouse

2. A. camel

B. cattle

C. paddy

D. buffalo

3. A. populated

B. loaded

C. harvested

D. lived

4. A. fields

B. flowers

C. lemons

D. parks

5. A. normal

B. visitor

C. transport

D. chore

II. Put the words in the box into two groups.

block	climb	clip	black	blue
blow	blossom	cloud	clue	clap

/b/	/cl/
-----block-----	-----climb-----
-----black-----	-----clip-----
-----blue-----	-----cloud-----
-----blow-----	-----clue-----
-----blossom-----	-----clap-----

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. People in my country are very open and..... I like to go there when I have free time. **friendly**
2. Some of my live in the countryside. **relatives**
3. Some people say that the country is more for the people who are retired. **suitable**
4. Entertainment is difficult to find in the country, in the evening. **particularly**
5. Natural disasters can..... destroy a harvest and leave the farmers with little or no money until the following year. **easily**

IV. Use the adjectives or adverbs in brackets in their correct forms of comparison to complete the sentences.

1. Minh says life in the countryside is he expected. He'll go there whenever he has free time. **more interesting than**
2. My brother is studying at a university in Ha Noi. He often says he loves living in our village because people here are.....people in Ha Noi. **more friendly than**
3. Last week we went to Sa Pa. It's to look at the paddy fields on mountain slopes than the paddy fields on the lowlands. **more wonderful**

4. My grandparents often tell us that they used to live in a life than it is now. **harder**
5. Living in the countryside is and living in big cities. **more peaceful, quieter than**
6. The cost of living in my town is in this area. **the most expensive**
7. Living in modern blocks of flats is other places. You can buy everything you want just on the ground floor. **more convenient than**
8. City children have life than the country children. **more exciting**
9. He is a famous athlete so of course he runs me. **faster than**
10. My grandfather says that farmers in the past worked farmers nowadays. **harder than**

V. Fill each blank with a word/ phrase in the box.

rice	countryside	herding	buffalo	busiest time
harvest time	buffalo-drawn carts	colourful	fantastic	noisier than

1. At the, my brother always helps my parents load the rice onto the truck and drives it home. **harvest time**
2. I often help my parents dry the in the yard in front of my house. **rice**
3. Some farmers in my village still use to transport rice home. **buffalo-drawn carts**
4. He usually goes the buffaloes with other boys in his village. **herding**
5. My pen pal friend says he would like to visit my at harvest time to see what farmers do. **countryside**
6. My friend has never ridden a so he would like to try once. **buffalo**
7. Harvest time is the of the year in the countryside. **busiest time**
8. Our garden is in spring when almost flowers bloom. **colourful**
9. I like looking at the stars on starry nights. It's **fantastic**
10. My uncle lives in the city. He says it's my village. **noisier than**

VI. Read the following paragraph and complete it with one suitable word in each blank.

My grandmother told me that our village (1)**was**..... very poor many years ago. The villagers had to work hard in the fields all day but they could not earn enough for their living. Their lives were very simple. Many people had to (2)**live**.....in houses made of straw and mud.

Nowadays my village has (3)**changed**..... a lot. People live in big brick houses. In the evening, they can listen to the (4)**news**.....on the radio or watch TV for entertainment. All people in my village try their best to make their living better. They raise and resurface the roads (5)**so**..... the roads will not be muddy and flooded after it rains. They widen the roads so cars and lorries can get to the village easily. They build a medical centre so people's health can be looked (6)**after**..... at any time. They build a new school so their (7)**children**..... have better learning conditions. They build a bridge (8)**over**.....the river so villagers have a shorter way to town. They also build a football ground so their children can (9).....**play/ do**..... sports. In addition, they grown cash crops so people can export the crops and have more money.

I would like to become an agricultural engineer in the future so I can apply new technology to our farming and do more for the village (10)**than** our parents did.

VII. Read the text and answer the questions below.

Last week Nick and some of his classmates went to the countryside. They went to visit a farm of Nick's uncle.

They left early in the morning and went there by bus. Nick's uncle, Mr. Brown met them at the bus stop and took them to his farm. On the way. Uncle Brown showed them the field of wheat and vegetables where some tractors were running up and down, ploughing and breaking soil, distributing manure and planting potatoes.

After lunch, they all went for a walk. In the large yard of the farm, they saw some farm machines. Among them is the biggest machine which is called a combine harvester. They were told that this machine can cut and thresh corn at the same time.

In the afternoon, they went to the place where cattle such as horses, sheep and cows were raised. They were very excited to see how cows were milked by the workers there. Uncle

Brown also spoke about many interesting things in the countryside. After having some fruits and cakes, they said goodbye and went home.

1. How did Peter and his classmates go to Uncle Brown's farm?

They went there by bus.

2. What does his uncle grow on his farm?

He grows wheat, vegetables and potatoes.

3. What can a tractor do?

It can plough and break soil, distribute manure and plant potatoes.

4. What is typical of a combine harvester?

A combine harvester can cut and thresh corn at the same time.

5. Which kinds of cattle are raised in Uncle Brown's farm?

The cattle such as horses, sheep and cows are raised in Uncle Brown's farm.

VIII. Choose the correct word A, B, C or D for each gap to complete the following passage.

My parents are farmers. They work very (1)..... on the paddy fields. They usually get (2) very early in the morning. After (3) breakfast, they feed the buffaloes, pigs, chickens, ducks and they (4) the eggs. From about eight, they work on the fields. They (5) rice but their main (6) is vegetables. From eleven thirty to one thirty, they rest and have lunch. They continue to work until five in the afternoon, then they come back home. My mother (7) the animals again while my father (8) the buffalo shed and the chicken coop. They usually finish their work at about six thirty. Twice a week, my mother (9) the vegetables and eggs to the town market to sell them then she often buys the things we need for our daily life. She also (10) me a small present each time.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|------------------|----------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. hard | B. hardly | C. harder | D. hardest |
| 2. A. on | B. off | C. up | D. in |
| 3. A. to have | B. having | C. have | D. had |
| 4. A. take | B. see | C. have | D. collect |
| 5. A. plant | B. water | C. grow | D. cut |
| 6. A. period | B. crop | C. time | D. harvest |
| 7. A. leads | B. feeds | C. gives | D. calls |

- | | | | |
|---------------|-----------|-------------|-----------|
| 8. A. cleans | B. washes | C. polishes | D. clears |
| 9. A. makes | B. takes | C. carries | D. brings |
| 10. A. buying | B. buys | C. to buy | D. bought |

IX. Find and correct ten mistakes in this passage.

Last summer, Tuan invited me go to his village in Thai Binh Province with his father.	1. go -> to go
It's harvest time, so all people there were very busy. The villagers got up very early and go to the fields to cut rice, loaded it onto buffalo-drawn carts or tractors and drove it home. Tuan helped his parents on the farm work. Tuan and I followed his father to go to the fields. There was so many space and I love the vast open space, the fresh air and the feel of freedom in the countryside. We could run around the fields and shout out loudly without disturbing anybody. I have never saw any interesting place like this. In the afternoon, some of Tuan's cousins take us to the fields to fly kites – It's was so exciting!	2. go -> went 3. on -> with 4. many -> much 5. feel -> feeling 6. saw -> seen 7. take -> took
The next morning, Tuan and I went to the market with his grandmother. There were many interesting thing there. Locals seld their home-made products and many fresh fruits such as bananas, oranges, apples and they also sold animals such as chickens, geese, ducks, cats, dogs and pigs. I enjoyed the atmosphere there.	8. thing -> things 9. seld -> sold
The trip to the countryside gave me my first experience of farm work: cutting rice, dry rice, planting vegetables, collecting potatoes. It's really unforgettable!	10. dry -> drying

X. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

Example: countryside/ children/ more/ freely/ city.

->In the countryside, children play more freely than in the city.

1. can/ you/ speak/ more/ slowly/ so/ I/ can/ understand/ you/?

Can you speak more slowly so that I can understand you?

2. Tet/ our house/ beautifully/ decorated/ than/ during/ year/.

At Tet, our house is more beautifully decorated than during the year.

3. homes/ city/ often/ better/ equipped/ with/ electrical appliances/ those/ countryside/.

Homes in the city are often better equipped with electrical appliances than those in the countryside.

4. nowadays/ more/ villagers/ use/ motorcycles/ for/ transport/ instead/ riding/ horse/walking/.

Nowadays more villagers are using motorcycles for transport instead of riding a horse or walking.

5. thanks/ TV/ Internet/ people/ my/ village/ have/ more/ fun/ and/ know/ more/ life/ outside/ village/.

Thanks to TV and the Internet, people in my village have more fun and know more about life outside my village.

XI. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their original meanings. Use the right comparative forms of the adverbs in brackets.

1. Hung drives more carefully than his brother. (**carefully**)

Hung's brother drives less carefully than he does./ Hung's brother doesn't drive as carefully as he does.

2. The laboratory in my school is now better equipped than some years ago. (**badly**)

Some years ago the laboratory in my school was worse equipped than now.

3. Nam works more lazily so he often gets worse marks than Quang. (**hard, good**)

Quang works harder so he often gets better marks than Nam.

4. Trung drives more carefully than Minh so he has rarely had an accident. (**carelessly**)

Minh drives more carelessly than Trung so he often has had an accident.

5. Going by taxi is faster than going by bus but it costs more than a bus. (**slow, little**)

Going by bus is slower than going by taxi but it costs less than a taxi.

TEST (UNIT 2)

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

- | | | | |
|----------------|----------|-----------|------------|
| 1. A. flag | B. glad | C. blame | D. clap |
| 2. A. click | B. glide | C. climb | D. blind |
| 3. A. clothing | B. blond | C. globe | D. slogan |
| 4. A. club | B. blunt | C. fluffy | D. glucose |
| 5. A. bloom | B. gloop | C. flood | D. sloop |

II. Fill in each blank with the correct word from the box.

ride	grassland	cattle	loaded	kites
beehive	vast	harvest	convenient	dry

1. Several people were flying..... on the field.

2. Russia is acountry with a lot of natural resources.
3. My brother is learning to.....a horse at the moment.
4. Farmers often leave the rice in the sun to
5. Theythe buffalo-drawn cart with hay.
6. Farmers always need extra help with the
7. Local people are turninginto farmland.
8. A..... is a type of box that people use for keeping bees in.
9. Is itto meet you at the moment?
10. My uncle raises a herd of on his farm.

III. Complete the sentences with suitable comparative forms of the words provided.

1. Towns are..... than villages. (big)
2. A sofa isthan a chair. (comfortable)
3. Does an ox runthan a horse? (slow)
4. Laura sings than her sister. (good)
5. My house is from the river than Nam's house. (far)
6. Minh plays the flutethan Quang. (bad)
7. Traffic in the city is always..... than that in the countryside. (busy)
8. This year the farmers workthan they did last year. (hard)
9. Villages arethan towns. (quiet)
10. I think people in this area live than those in other areas. (happy)

IV. Use the suggestions to write sentences of comparative.

1. Your brother/ optimistic/ you.

.....
.

2. Air/ countryside/ healthy/ city.

.....
.

3. People/ countryside/ work/ hard/ city.

.....
.

4. This paddy field/ large/ five stadiums.

.....
.

5. A cow/ plough/ bad/ a buffalo.

.....
.

6. Mai/ speak English/ fluent/ her sister.

.....
.

7. Summer/ hot/ autumn.

.....
.

8. Life/ countryside/ peaceful/ city.

.....
.

9. An ox/ strong/ a horse.

.....
.

10. Quang/ write/ careful/ his friends.

.....
.

V. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Nam helped his parents the rice onto the ox-drawn cart.

- A. load B. collect C. dry D. ride

2. In Emi's opinion, city life is more than country life.

- A. friendly B. exciting C. natural D. peaceful

3. The sky is here in the countryside because there are no buildings to block the view.

- A. tidy B. close C. dense D. vast

4. Look! Some children are the buffaloes.

- A. picking B. playing C. driving D. herding

5. Viet plays the guitar than Phong does.

- A. more goodly B. more well C. better D. gooder
6. Medical help is easily obtained in remote areas than in towns.
- A. more B. fewer C. less D. higher
7. Today Peter gets up than he did yesterday.
- A. earlier B. more early C. more earlily D. more earlier
8. He seems to bethan we thought.
- A. more quick B. more quickly C. quicklier D. quicker
9. The wind is blowing.....than it did last night.
- A. stronger B. more strongly C. stronglier D. more stronger
10. Is living in the citythan living in the country?
- A. more convenient B. as convenient C. most convenient D. so convenient

VI. Fill each blank with a correct word to finish the passage.

Life in the countryside is a bit slower than life in the city. It isn't as exciting as life in the city. But (1)general people work hard – they work in the fields, in the garden, in the woods, etc. They grow vegetables, cultivate crops and raise (2)..... (cows, horses, buffaloes, etc.) Some people even have vineyards and fruit orchards.

There is a ton of work to be done on the farm – milking cows, taking (3) of livestock, mucking out, ploughing fields, sowing seeds, fertilizing, harvesting, etc. It is said that a farmer works from (4) to sunset. People use farm machinery and drive tractors.

Children can freely play outdoors. In rural areas, people (5) each other better. There are no skyscrapers in the countryside. People's home may be (6) a farmhouse or a cottage.

People sniff air that is definitely cleaner than air in the city. There is also (7) violence and vandalism. The traffic isn't as dense as in the city. There (8) no rush hours. Furthermore, it isn't as noisy as it is in cities.

People living in the countryside can enjoy the green scenery. They can enjoy the nature. They can (9) birds chirping, deer stopping in a clearing in a wood. Besides, people can eat fresh home-grown (10) and fruit. It seems that life in the countryside is not that stressful. Altogether that must have a positive effect on their health.

VII. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers each question about the passage.

Living in the country is something that people from the city often dream about. However, in reality, it has both advantages and disadvantages.

There are certainly many advantages to living in the country. First, you can enjoy peace and quietness. Moreover, people tend to be friendlier. A further advantage is that there is less traffic, so it is safer for young children.

However, there are certain disadvantages or drawbacks to life outside the city. First, because there are fewer people, you are likely to have few friends. In addition, entertainment is difficult to find, particularly in the evening. Furthermore, the fact that there are fewer shops and services means that it is hard to find jobs.

In short, it can be seen that the country is more suitable for some people than others. On the whole, it is often the best for those who are retired or who have young children. In contrast, young people who have a career are better provided in the city.

1. According to the passage, living in the country has
 - A. only good points
 - B. only bad points
 - C. both good and bad points
 - D. no disadvantages
2. How many advantages does living in the country have?
 - A. Two
 - B. Three
 - C. Four
 - D. No
3. Living in the country is safer for young children because
 - A. there is less traffic
 - B. there are few shops
 - C. there are fewer people
 - D. there are few services
4. Which of the following statements is NOT true according to the passage?
 - A. People in the country tend to be friendlier than people in the city.
 - B. It's hard to find entertainment in the country.
 - C. There are fewer shops and services in the country.
 - D. The country is only suitable for retired people.
5. Having few friends is
 - A. one of drawbacks to life in the country.
 - B. the only disadvantage to living in the country.
 - C. one of certain drawbacks to life outside the city.
 - D. one of certain advantages to life outside the city.

VIII. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Hi! My name is Marek. I've been staying in England on an exchange visit and I've found it a very interesting experience. I've been staying with a boy called Peter and his family for two weeks. The first thing I learnt was how to greet English people. When I met Peter and his parents at the airport, I tried to kiss them on the cheeks. His parents looked a bit shocked but let me kiss them. Peter just smiled and said "Hi!".

The city where they live is very interesting, and is much bigger than my small village. I've never seen so many motorways, and there's a recycling bin on every corner. It's really noisy, tough, and there are so many cars that they need to have traffic lights everywhere.

I like it here but I think I still prefer the countryside. There are more trees and animals, and not so many factories.

In all, I've learnt a lot from my exchange but I'll be glad to get back to Poland. I wonder what Peter will think when he comes to stay here!

1. How long has Marek been in England?

.....
.

2. How did he greet Peter's parents at the airport?

.....
.

3. What hasn't Marek seen before?

.....
.

4. Does Marek prefer cities or the countryside?

.....
.

5. Where does Marek come from?

.....
.

IX. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their original meanings using the words provided.

1. Mr. Quynh is the happiest person in the village. **(than)**

No one in the village

.....

2. Life in the countryside isn't as stressful as life in the city. **(more)**

Life in the city

.....

3. This is the largest kite I've ever seen. **(larger)**

I've never

.....

4. Phong was a quicker walker than his friends. **(quickly)**

Phong

.....

5. Houses in the city are much more expensive than those in the countryside. **(much)**

Houses in the countryside

.....

X. Use the following suggestions to write passages about city and country life with comparative forms of adjectives.

- Cities/ big/ life/ exciting//. Public transport/ good//. But/ life/ stressful//. People/ busy/ run/ one place/ other//.

- Life/ country/ may/ boring/ but/ people/ close/ nature/ and/ air/ clean//. People/ have/ relaxed/ lifestyle//. But/ there/ nothing bad/ have/ nothing/ do/ all day//.

.....

.

.....

.

.....

.

.....

.

.....

.

.....

•

.....

•

.....

•

.....

•

.....

•

.....

•

ANSWER KEYS - TEST (UNIT 2)

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

1. A. flag B. glad **C. blame** D. clap
2. **A. click** B. glide C. climb D. blind
3. A. clothing **B. blond** C. globe D. slogan
4. A. club B. blunt C. fluffy **D. glucose**
5. A. bloom B. gloop **C. flood** D. sloop

II. Fill in each blank with the correct word from the box.

ride	grassland	cattle	loaded	kites
beehive	vast	harvest	convenient	dry

1. Several people were flying..... **kites** on the field.
2. Russia is a **vast** country with a lot of natural resources.
3. My brother is learning to **ride** a horse at the moment.
4. Farmers often leave the rice in the sun to **dry**
5. They **loaded** the buffalo-drawn cart with hay.
6. Farmers always need extra help with the **harvest**
7. Local people are turning **grassland** into farmland.
8. A **beehive** is a type of box that people use for keeping bees in.
9. Is it **convenient** to meet you at the moment?
10. My uncle raises a herd of **cattle** on his farm.

III. Complete the sentences with suitable comparative forms of the words provided.

1. Towns are **bigger** than villages. (big)

2. A sofa is **more comfortable** than a chair. (comfortable)
3. Does an ox run **more slowly** than a horse? (slow)
4. Laura sings **better** than her sister. (good)
5. My house is **farther/ further** from the river than Nam's house. (far)
6. Minh plays the flute **worse** than Quang. (bad)
7. Traffic in the city is always **busier** than that in the countryside. (busy)
8. This year the farmers work **harder** than they did last year. (hard)
9. Villages are **quieter/ more quiet** than towns. (quiet)
10. I think people in this area live **more happily** than those in other areas. (happy)

IV. Use the suggestions to write sentences of comparative.

1. Your brother/ optimistic/ you.
Your brother is more optimistic than you (are).
2. Air/ countryside/ healthy/ city.
Air in the countryside is healthier than that in the city.
3. People/ countryside/ work/ hard/ city.
People in the countryside work harder than those in the city.
4. This paddy field/ large/ five stadiums.
This paddy field is larger than five stadiums.
5. A cow/ plough/ bad/ a buffalo.
A cow ploughs worse than a buffalo (does).
6. Mai/ speak English/ fluent/ her sister.
Mai speaks English more fluently than her sister (does).
7. Summer/ hot/ autumn.
Summer is hotter than autumn.
8. Life/ countryside/ peaceful/ city.
Life in the countryside is more peaceful than that in the city.
9. An ox/ strong/ a horse.
An ox is stronger than a horse.
10. Quang/ write/ careful/ his friends.
Quang writes more carefully than his friends (do).

V. Choose the best answer to complete each of the following sentences.

1. Nam helped his parents the rice onto the ox-drawn cart.
A. load B. collect C. dry D. ride
2. In Emi's opinion, city life is more than country life.
A. friendly B. exciting C. natural D. peaceful
3. The sky is here in the countryside because there are no buildings to block the view.
A. tidy B. close C. dense D. vast
4. Look! Some children are the buffaloes.
A. picking B. playing C. driving D. herding
5. Viet plays the guitar than Phong does.
A. more goodly B. more well C. better D. gooder
6. Medical help is easily obtained in remote areas than in towns.
A. more B. fewer C. less D. higher
7. Today Peter gets up than he did yesterday.
A. earlier B. more early C. more earlily D. more earlier
8. He seems to be than we thought.
A. more quick B. more quickly C. quicklier D. quicker
9. The wind is blowing than it did last night.
A. stronger B. more strongly C. stronglier D. more stronger
10. Is living in the city than living in the country?
A. more convenient B. as convenient C. most convenient D. so convenient

VI. Fill each blank with a correct word to finish the passage.

Life in the countryside is a bit slower than life in the city. It isn't as exciting as life in the city. But (1) **in** general people work hard – they work in the fields, in the garden, in the woods, etc. They grow vegetables, cultivate crops and raise (2) **cattle** (cows, horses, buffaloes, etc.) Some people even have vineyards and fruit orchards.

There is a ton of work to be done on the farm – milking cows, taking (3) **care** of livestock, mucking out, ploughing fields, sowing seeds, fertilizing, harvesting, etc. It is said that a farmer works from (4) **sunrise** to sunset. People use farm machinery and drive tractors.

Children can freely play outdoors. In rural areas, people (5)**know**.....each other better. There are no skyscrapers in the countryside. People's home may be (6)**either**a farmhouse or a cottage.

People sniff air that is definitely cleaner than air in the city. There is also (7)**less**..... violence and vandalism. The traffic isn't as dense as in the city. There (8)**are**..... no rush hours. Furthermore, it isn't as noisy as it is in cities.

People living in the countryside can enjoy the green scenery. They can enjoy the nature. They can (9)**hear**..... birds chirping, deer stopping in a clearing in a wood. Besides, people can eat fresh home-grown (10)**vegetables**and fruit. It seems that life in the countryside is not that stressful. Altogether that must have a positive effect on their health.

VII. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answers each question about the passage.

Living in the country is something that people from the city often dream about. However, in reality, it has both advantages and disadvantages.

There are certainly many advantages to living in the country. First, you can enjoy peace and quietness. Moreover, people tend to be friendlier. A further advantage is that there is less traffic, so it is safer for young children.

However, there are certain disadvantages or drawbacks to life outside the city. First, because there are fewer people, you are likely to have few friends. In addition, entertainment is difficult to find, particularly in the evening. Furthermore, the fact that there are fewer shops and services means that it is hard to find jobs.

In short, it can be seen that the country is more suitable for some people than others. On the whole, it is often the best for those who are retired or who have young children. In contrast, young people who have a career are better provided in the city.

1. According to the passage, living in the country has

A. only good points

B. only bad points

C. both good and bad points

D. no disadvantages

2. How many advantages does living in the country have?

A. Two

B. Three

C. Four

D. No

3. Living in the country is safer for young children because

A. there is less traffic

B. there are few shops

He prefers the countryside.

5. Where does Marek come from?

He comes from Poland.

IX. Rewrite the following sentences without changing their original meanings using the words provided.

1. Mr. Quynh is the happiest person in the village. **(than)**

No one in the village **is happier than Mr. Quynh.**

2. Life in the countryside isn't as stressful as life in the city. **(more)**

Life in the city **is more stressful than life in the countryside.**

3. This is the largest kite I've ever seen. **(larger)**

I've never **seen a larger kite than this.**

4. Phong was a quicker walker than his friends. **(quickly)**

Phong **walked more quickly than his friends.**

5. Houses in the city are much more expensive than those in the countryside. **(much)**

Houses in the countryside **are much cheaper than those in the city.**

X. Use the following suggestions to write passages about city and country life with comparative forms of adjectives.

- Cities/ big/ life/ exciting//. Public transport/ good//. But/ life/ stressful//. People/ busy/ run/ one place/ other//.

- Life/ country/ may/ boring/ but/ people/ close/ nature/ and/ air/ clean//. People/ have/ relaxed/ lifestyle//. But/ there/ nothing bad/ have/ nothing/ do/ all day//.

Suggested answer:

Cities are usually much bigger and life is more exciting there. Public transport is also better. But life can be more stressful. People are often busier running from one place to the other.

Life in the country may be more boring but people are closer to nature and the air is cleaner. People have a more relaxed lifestyle. But there is nothing worse than having nothing to do all day.

UNIT 3: PEOPLES OF VIET NAM

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES, GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

I. New words:

ancestor (n)	/'ænsɛstə(r)/	ông cha, tổ tiên	insignificant (adj)	/,ɪnsɪg'nɪfɪkənt/	không quan trọng, không ý nghĩa
basic (adj)	/'beɪsɪk/	cơ bản	majority (n)	/mə'dʒɔrəti/	đa số
complicated (adj)	/'kɒmplɪkətɪd /	tinh vi, phức tạp	minority (n)	/maɪ'nɔrəti/	thiểu số
costume (n)	/'kɒstju:m/	trang phục	multicultural (adj)	/,mʌltɪ'kʌltʃərəl /	đa văn hóa
curious (adj) curiosity (n)	/'kjʊəriəs/	tò mò, muốn tìm hiểu	recognise (v)	/'rekəɡnaɪz/	công nhận, xác nhận
custom (n)	/'kʌstəm/	tập quán, phong tục	shawl (n)	/ʃɔ:l/	khăn quàng
diverse (adj)	/daɪ'vɜ:s/	đa dạng	speciality (n)	/,speʃi'æləti/	đặc sản
diversity (n)	/daɪ'vɜ:səti/	sự đa dạng, phong phú	stilt house (n)	/stɪlt haʊs/	nhà sàn
ethnic (adj)	/'eθnɪk/	(thuộc) dân tộc	terraced fi eld (n)	/'terəst fɪ :ld/	ruộng bậc thang
ethnic group (n)	/'eθnɪk gru:p/	(nhóm) dân tộc	tradition (n)	/trə'dɪʃn/	truyền thống
ethnic minority people (n)	/'eθnɪk maɪ'nɔrəti'pi :pl/	người dân tộc thiểu số	unique (adj)	/ju'ni:k/	độc nhất, độc đáo
gather (v)	/'gæðə(r)/	thu thập, hái lượm	waterwheel (n)	/'wɔ:təwi:l/	cối xay nước
heritage (n)	/'herɪtɪdʒ/	di sản	hunt (v)	/hʌnt/	săn bắt

II. Grammar:

1. Questions: What, When, Where, How often, How far

Look out!

Which is used instead of what or who to ask somebody to be exact about one or more people or things from a limited number:

Which way leads to the town? This one..

Which of you has to cook dinner? I do.

2. Articles:

a. Indefinite article (a/an)

- We use **a** before consonant sounds, and **an** before vowel sounds

Vowel sounds: an hour, an apple

Consonant sounds: a director, a question, a code.

- With something we refer to for the first time

We've just had a great idea.

I will give you a call next week.

- With one of a group of things

Shall we choose a book from this catalogue?

- Where we use an adjective to describe a noun.

Carol is a very big city.

It's a beautiful day.

- With someone's job.

Peter is a truck driver.

- With singular fractions, group numbers and large numbers.

One and a half kilos, a dozen eggs, a hundred envelopes.

- Meaning Per:

He was doing ninety miles an hour / Julie earns £ 500 a week.

b. Definite articles

- With nouns we have mentioned previously

There is a bedroom and a living room. The bedroom is quite large.

- With nouns we mention for the first time, but where it is clear which one we are talking about.

Can you pass the salt?

My life changed completely after the war.

- Where there is only one of something. It is clear which one we are talking about.

The moon is full tonight.

- With nouns followed by a descriptive phrase, which makes them definite.

This is the man I told you about.

Note: London Bridge, but the tower of London.

- With national groups.

The British drink far too much tea.

- With classes of people.

The rich get richer and the poor get poorer.

- With individual items which represent a class.

The lion is fast disappearing.

- With name of musical instruments that we can play.

I can't play the piano but I can play the guitar.

- With some geographical names. In particular Oceans, seas, rivers, canals and regions.

The Thames flows into the North sea.

Also with plural countries or where the country name contains a noun.

The Netherlands, the People's Republic of China.

- With superlatives, ordinals, the same, the only.

This is the best; You are the first; This is the only one.

- With media.

What's on (the) television? I went to the cinema.

c. Zero article (no article)

- With uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns when we are talking generally.

Give peace a chance; Football is life; All he talks about is cars.

- With most continents, countries, states, islands, mountains, lakes, cities, parks, roads and streets, squares, bridges, palaces, castles, cathedrals, stations and airports.

We live in France.

We took the train from Hanoi station to Saigon.

- With company names, years, months, days and special times of the year.

She works for Lufthansa.

I'll see you in January.

- With names of meals when we are talking generally.

It's time for lunch (But the lunch I had at Café Sol was good value)

- With unique jobs or roles (The definite article is also possible in these cases).

Jim is the chairman of the company.

- With prepositions of place with certain building where the purpose of the building is more important than the place itself.

Sally is in prison (She is a prisoner)

Sally is in the prison (She is a visitor to that specific building)

Similar are bed, church, class, hospital, school, university.

- With means of transport when we are talking generally.

We went to there by car (But we went there by the car that Alex borrowed)

Note that if we use in or on, we need an indefinite article.

We went there in a car/ on a bus.

III. Pronunciation: Clusters_ /sk/, /sp/, /st/

B. EXERCISES

I. Read the following sentences aloud, and put the words with the cluster /sk/, /sp/, or /st/ into the correct column.

1. How do you spell your surname?
2. He is going to make a speech to city businessmen.
3. How much does your family spend on food each week?
4. If you don't pay the bill, our company will disconnect the Internet connectivity.
5. Don't let these little problems discourage you.
6. John did a lot of sport when he was at school.
7. Could you speak more slowly?
8. My brother is a stamp collector.
9. The house was built of grey stone.
10. You have ten minutes to complete the three tasks.
11. Potato crisps are my favourite snack.
12. They are building a new school in our area.
13. What is the best way to get to the museum from here?
14. I'll ask the shopkeeper how much the jacket is.
15. Indonesian food is rather spicy.
16. Scientists are hoping to discover the cause of that illness.
17. He's very skillful with his hands.
18. I'll send you the text as soon as I have any news.
19. The castle stands on a hill.
20. She always reads the children a bedtime story.

/sk/	/sp/	/st/

II. Fill in each blank of the passage with the correct word/ phrase from the box.

a tour	ethnic groups	little bridges	information
research	cultural heritage	stilt house	display area

Vietnam Museum of Ethnology in Ha Noi offers an insight into the 54 different ethnic groups of Viet Nam in an effort to preserve (1)

The museum is full of (2).....about traditional Vietnamese ways of life of all the Vietnamese (3)

The display hall shows everyday objects representing each ethnic group, a (4) center, a library and an auditorium. Its indoor exhibition area provides you (5) which includes the Viet, Muong, Tay, Thai, H'mong, Yao, Khmer, Cham and Hoa ethnic groups.

The outdoor (6) Presents a variety of Vietnamese homes including a Tay (7) and a Viet house, each separated by a small stream and reached via (8) The museum is suitable for children, and all documents and signs are translated into English and French.

III. Fill each blank with a, an, or the to complete the following passage.

Ethnic groups

Vietnam is (1).....multi-nationality country with 54 ethnic groups. The Viet (Kinh) people account for 87% of (2) country's population and mainly inhabit (3)Red River Delta, (4) central coastal delta, (5) Mekong Delta and major cities. (6) other 53 ethnic minority groups, totaling over 8 million people, are scattered over mountains areas spreading from the North to the South.

(7) number of ethnic minorities had mastered some farming techniques. They grew rice plants in swamped paddy fields and carried out irrigation. Others went hunting, fishing, collecting and lived (8) semi-nomadic life. Each group has its own culture, diverse and special.

However, (9)evident gap in the material and normal life has indeed still existed between people living in the deltas and those living in mountain areas as well as among ethnic minorities themselves. (10) Vietnamese government has worked out specific policies and special treatments in order to help mountainous people catching up with lowland people, and made great efforts to develop and preserve traditional cultural identities of each ethnic minority group.

IV. Insert a correct article (a, an, the) if necessary to complete the following sentences.

1. Among 54 ethnic groups in Vietnam, the Odu hassmallest population.
2. There isstilt house in my grandparents' village.
3. In Tay families old people usually stay at home to look after house.
4. Although Phong is member of the Nung ethnic group, he wears uniform when he goes to school.
5. This isold costume of the Pupeo people.
6. The Chapi is..... unique musical instrument of the Raglai people.
7. The communal house is also used as place of worship.
8. Recently, Thai time prefer to wear King's style of dress.

V. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences

1. The Tay people live mostly in the regions in the north of Vietnam.	MOUNTAIN
2. You can taste some of the local people sold right there at the open-air market.	SPECIAL
3. I'm sure you will have an time when you attend Hoa Ban Festival.	FORGET
4. Do the Cham people live in the provinces of the country?	SOUTH
5. The yellow color of five-colored sticky rice Earth?	SYMBOL
6. Is the..... of the stilt house on the side?	ENTER
7. We like the songs of the Muong in Hoa Binh.	TRADITION
8. Are there manyfestival held by the Viet people in spring?	RELIGION

9. Thai cloth is famous for being unique,..... and strong.	COLOUR
10. He was one of the greatest of the Ede ethnic group.	ART

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C, or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Communal House (Rong House)

The Rong House can only be (1) in villages to the north of the Central Highlands, especially in Gia Lai and Kon Tum provinces. It is a large, imposing, beautifully decorated stilt house built (2) the middle of the village. It is where community activities (3), meetings, wedding ceremonies, or praying ceremonies. It is also the place for reception of guests. The Rong House of each ethnic group has its own architectural style, design, and décor. Yet there are shared (4) In the village, it is often (5) house roofed with yellow-dried thatch leaves and having 8 big wood columns. The rafters are decorated with patterns of bright colors, depicting religious scenes, legendary stories about ancient heroes, stylized animals and other familiar things of the village life. The most distinction of the decor of the Rong House is the (6)..... of the brilliant God of Sun. The Rong house is a (7) of the culture all of Central Highlanders, an age-old and stable culture. The bigger the house is, the wealthier the village is. It is a (8) of the whole village.

1. A. find	B. found	C. to find	D. finding
2. A. on	B. at	C. in	D. under
3. A. take place	B. take on	C. happens	D. occurs
4. A. designs	B. cultures	C. customs	D. features
5. A. a big	B. a bigger	C. the biggest	D. biggest
6. A. painting	B. photo	C. image	D. portrait
7. A. signal	B. symbol	C. sign	D. scence
8. A. design	B. respect	C. proud	D. pride

VII. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Duong Lam Village is located in Duong Lam commute at a 45 km distance from Hanoi. It is the birthplace of two kings in the history of Vietnam, Phung Hung (or Bo Cai Dai

Vuong) and Ngo Quyen, who opened up the long-term self-control and independent period of Viet Nam after Bach Dang victory in the year 938.

All houses, gates, village gates and wells are built of laterite creating an architectural complex, a unique village that is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.

At present, there are still nearly 200 old houses and many other historical monuments such as Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Royal Tomb, Mong Phu Communal House, Ho Gam Hill at which Phung Hung killed tigers to rescue villagers and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

1. Where is Duong Lam village?

.....

2. Who were the two kings whose birthplace is Duong Lam Village?

.....

3. What is Duong Lam typical for?

.....

4. How many old houses as there in Duong Lam?

.....

5. What are the famous historical monuments there?

.....

VIII. Read the following passage and choose the best answer.

The Sanchay Ethnic Group

Proper name: Sanchay

Other names: Honban, Chung, Trai

Population: 114,012 people

Local groups: Caolan and Sanchi

Language: The language of Caolan belongs to the Tay-Nung group (of the Kai-Kadai language family). and the language of the Sanchi belongs to the Handicrafts groups (of the Sino-Tibetan language family).

Production activities: The Sanchay are agricultural people who farm mainly wet rice paddies, but they also cultivate swidden fields which they prepare by the slash-and-burn method. They use the digging stick to make holes for seedings. Fish catching plays an important role in the economic life as well. With their unique fishing tools, such as hand nets and woven baskets, fish catching supplies the Sanchay food and improves their daily meals.

Diet: The Sanchay eat mainly ordinary rice. They also drink a lot of wine especially during the Tet holidays or festivals. Men smoke Tobacco in a water pipe.

Closing: Sanchay women wear the Cham-style skirt and long shirt or tunic which is decorated around the bottom hem and on the back. For daily wear, Sanchay women wear

one Cham-style cloth belt, but on special occasions, like the New Year festival, they wear two or three silk belts of different colors.

Housing: Sanchay live in the provinces of the northeast. They live in the stilt houses of a style similar to those of the Tay, who live in the same area.

Transportation: The Sanchay usually carry goods on a bag on their back like a backpack.

1. What is the population of the Sanchay people?
A. nearly 1,000,000 people
B. over 200,000 people
C. over 100,000 people
D. nearly 14,000 people
2. The Sanchay people use to make holes for seedlings.
A. digging sticks B. spades C. hand nets D. pipes
3. When do Sanchay women wear two or three silk belts?
A. every day B. at weekends C. on wet days D. on special occasions
4. The Sanchay people live in
A. modern flats B. stilt houses
C. northern provinces D. eastern provinces
5. Which of the following statements is NOT true?
A. The Sanchay mainly cultivate swidden fields.
B. The Sanchay use woven basket to catch fish.
C. The main food of the Sanchay is ordinary rice.
D. The Sanchay people carry goods on their back.

IX. Make questions for the underlined words of these answers.

1. Mr. Pha goes cutting wood in the forest once a month.
2. Artists from the Central Highlands will give cong performance in the festival.
3. My father bought a costume of the Bahnar at an open-air market in Kon Tum.
4. The Hani people live in Lai Chau and Lao Cai.
5. The Coho celebrate their New Year holidays in December.
6. It is 2 kilometers from here to the communal house.
7. The Thaiwomen's shawls are the most beautiful of all.
8. The visitors got to Sila village on foot.
9. My uncle has been Quang Nam to write an article about the Sedang.
10. Pao spent three months to make this musical instrument.

X. Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. What is the price of a dish of five-colored sticky rice?
How much
2. Would do you mind carrying my basket for me, please?
Could
3. Why do some ethnic peoples build the communal house?
What

4. How long have you been an ethnologist?

When

5. Who do these beautiful ornaments belong to?

Whose

KEYS TO EXERCISES_UNIT 3

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES, GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

I. New words:

ancestor (n)	/'ænsɛstə(r)/	ông cha, tổ tiên	insignificant (adj)	/,ɪnsɪg'nɪfɪkənt/	không quan trọng, không ý nghĩa
basic (adj)	/'beɪsɪk/	cơ bản	majority (n)	/mə'dʒɒrəti/	đa số
complicated (adj)	/'kɒmplɪkətɪd/	tinh vi, phức tạp	minority (n)	/maɪ'nɒrəti/	thiểu số
costume (n)	/'kɒstju:m/	trang phục	multicultural (adj)	/,mʌltɪ'kʌltʃərəl/	đa văn hóa
curious (adj)	/'kjʊəriəs/	tò mò, muốn tìm hiểu	recognise (v)	/'rekəɡnaɪz/	công nhận, xác nhận
custom (n)	/'kʌstəm/	tập quán, phong tục	shawl (n)	/ʃɔ:l/	khăn quàng
diverse (adj)	/daɪ'vɜ:s/	đa dạng	speciality (n)	/,speʃɪ'æləti/	đặc sản
diversity (n)	/daɪ'vɜ:səti/	sự đa dạng, phong phú	stilt house (n)	/stɪlt haʊs/	nhà sàn
ethnic (adj)	/'eθnɪk/	(thuộc) dân tộc	terraced field (n)	/'terəst fɪ:ld/	ruộng bậc thang
ethnic group	/'eθnɪk gru:p/	(nhóm)	tradition (n)	/trə'dɪʃn/	truyền

(n)		dân tộc			thống
ethnic minority people (n)	/ˈeθnɪk maɪˈnɒrətiˈpiːpl/	người dân tộc thiểu số	unique (adj)	/juˈni:k/	độc nhất, độc đáo
gather (v)	/ˈgæðə(r)/	thu thập, hái lượm	waterwheel (n)	/ˈwɔːtəwi:l/	cối xay nước
heritage (n)	/ˈherɪtɪdʒ/	di sản			
hunt (v)	/hʌnt/	săn bắt			

II. Grammar:

II. Grammar:

1. Questions: What, When, Where, How often, How far

Look out!

Which is used instead of what or who to ask somebody to be exact about one or more people or things from a limited number:

Which way leads to the town? This one..

Which of you has to cook dinner? I do.

2. Articles:

a. Indefinite article (a/an)

- We use **a** before consonant sounds, and **an** before vowel sounds

Vowel sounds: an hour, an apple

Consonant sounds: a director, a question, a code.

- With something we refer to for the first time

We've just had a great idea.

I will give you a call next week.

- With one of a group of things

Shall we choose a book from this catalogue?

- Where we use an adjective to describe a noun.

Carol is a very big city.

It's a beautiful day.

- With someone's job.

Peter is a truck driver.

- With singular fractions, group numbers and large numbers.

One and a half kilos, a dozen eggs, a hundred envelopes.

- Meaning Per:

He was doing ninety miles an hour / Julie earns £ 500 a week.

b. Definite articles

- With nouns we have mentioned previously

There is a bedroom and a living room. The bedroom is quite large.

- With nouns we mention for the first time, but where it is clear which one we are talking about.

Can you pass the salt?

My life changed completely after the war.

- Where there is only one of something. It is clear which one we are talking about.

The moon is full tonight.

- With nouns followed by a descriptive phrase, which makes them definite.

This is the man I told you about.

Note: London Bridge, but the tower of London.

- With national groups.

The British drink far too much tea.

- With classes of people.

The rich get richer and the poor get poorer.

- With individual items which represent a class.

The lion is fast disappearing.

- With name of musical instruments that we can play.

I can't play the piano but I can play the guitar.

- With some geographical names. In particular Oceans, seas, rivers, canals and regions.

The Thames flows into the North sea.

Also with plural countries or where the country name contains a noun.

The Netherlands, the People's Republic of China.

- With superlatives, ordinals, the same, the only.

This is the best; You are the first; This is the only one.

- With media.

What's on (the) television? I went to the cinema.

c. Zero article (no article)

- With uncountable nouns and plural countable nouns when we are talking generally.

Give peace a chance; Football is life; All he talks about is cars.

- With most continents, countries, states, islands, mountains, lakes, cities, parks, roads and streets, squares, bridges, palaces, castles, cathedrals, stations and airports.

We live in France.

We took the train from Hanoi station to Saigon.

- With company names, years, months, days and special times of the year.

She works for Lufthansa.

I'll see you in January.

- With names of meals when we are talking generally.

It's time for lunch (But the lunch I had at Café Sol was good value)

- With unique jobs or roles (The definite article is also possible in these cases).

Jim is the chairman of the company.

- With prepositions of place with certain building where the purpose of the building is more important than the place itself.

Sally is in prison (She is a prisoner)

Sally is in the prison (She is a visitor to that specific building)

Similar are bed, church, class, hospital, school, university.

- With means of transport when we are talking generally.

We went to there by car (But we went there by the car that Alex borrowed)

Note that if we use in or on, we need an indefinite article.

We went there in a car/ on a bus.

III. Pronunciation: Clusters_ /sk/, /sp/, /st/

B. EXERCISES

I. Read the following sentences aloud, and put the words with the cluster /sk/, /sp/, or /st/ into the correct column.

21. How do you spell your surname?

22. He is going to make a speech to city businessmen.

23. How much does your family spend on food each week?

24. If you don't pay the bill, our company will disconnect the Internet connectivity.

25. Don't let these little problems discourage you.

26. John did a lot of sport when he was at school.
27. Could you speak more slowly?
28. My brother is a stamp collector.
29. The house was built of grey stone.
30. You have ten minutes to complete the three tasks.
31. Potato crisps are my favourite snack.
32. They are building a new school in our area.
33. What is the best way to get to the museum from here?
34. I'll ask the shopkeeper how much the jacket is.
35. Indonesian food is rather spicy.
36. Scientists are hoping to discover the cause of that illness.
37. He's very skillful with his hands.
38. I'll send you the text as soon as I have any news.
39. The castle stands on a hill.
40. She always reads the children a bedtime story.

/sk/	/sp/	/st/
disconnect, discourage, tasks, school, ask, discover, skillful	Spell, speech, spend, sport, speak, crisp, spicy	Stamp, stone, best, text, stand, story

II. Fill in each blank of the passage with the correct word/ phrase from the box.

a tour	ethnic groups	little bridges	information
research	cultural heritage	stilt house	display area

1. cultural heritage 2. Information 3. ethnic groups 4. research

5. a tour 6. display area 7. stilt house 8. little bridges

Vietnam Museum of Ethnology in Ha Noi offers an insight into the 54 different ethnic groups of Viet Nam in an effort to preserve (1)

The museum is full of (2).....about traditional Vietnamese ways of life of all the Vietnamese (3)

The display hall shows everyday objects representing each ethnic group, a (4) center, a library and an auditorium. Its indoor exhibition area provides you (5) which includes the Viet, Muong, Tay, Thai, H'mong, Yao, Khmer, Cham and Hoa ethnic groups.

The outdoor (6) Presents a variety of Vietnamese homes including a Tay (7) and a Viet house, each separated by a small stream and reached via (8) The museum is suitable for children, and all documents and signs are translated into English and French.

III. Fill each blank with a, an, or the to complete the following passage.

1 a 2 the 3 the 4 the 5 the 6 the 7 a 8 a 9 an 10 the

Ethnic groups

Vietnam is (1).....multi-nationality country with 54 ethnic groups. The Viet (Kinh) people account for 87% of (2) country's population and mainly inhabit (3)Red River Delta, (4) central coastal delta, (5) Mekong Delta and major cities. (6) other 53 ethnic minority groups, totaling over 8 million people, are scattered over mountains areas spreading from the North to the South.

(7) number of ethnic minorities had mastered some farming techniques. They grew rice plants in swamped paddy fields and carried out irrigation. Others went hunting, fishing, collecting and lived (8) semi-nomadic life. Each group has its own culture, diverse and special.

However, (9)evident gap in the material and normal life has indeed still existed between people living in the deltas and those living in mountain areas as well as among ethnic minorities themselves. (10) Vietnamese government has worked out specific policies and special treatments in order to help mountainous people catching up with lowland people, and made great efforts to develop and preserve traditional cultural identities of each ethnic minority group.

IV. Insert a correct article (a, an, the) if necessary to complete the following sentences.

1. the 2. a 3. -/ the 4. a/ a 5. an 6. A 7. a 8. the

1. Among 54 ethnic groups in Vietnam, the Odu hassmallest population.
2. There isstilt house in my grandparents' village.
3. In Tay families old people usually stay at home to look after house.
4. Although Phong is member of the Nung ethnic group, he wears uniform when he goes to school.
5. This isold costume of the Pupeo people.
6. The Chapi is..... unique musical instrument of the Raglai people.
7. The communal house is also used as..... place of worship.
8. Recently, Thai time prefer to wear King's style of dress.

V. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences

11. The Tay people live mostly in the regions in the north of Vietnam.	MOUNTAIN
12. You can taste some of the local people sold right there at the open-air market.	SPECIAL
13. I'm sure you will have an time when you	FORGET

attend Hoa Ban Festival.	
14. Do the Cham people live in the provinces of the country?	SOUTH
15. The yellow color of five-colored sticky rice Earth?	SYMBOL
16. Is the..... of the stilt house on the side?	ENTER
17. We like the songs of the Muong in Hoa Binh.	TRADITION
18. Are there many festival held by the Viet people in spring?	RELIGION
19. Thai cloth is famous for being unique,..... and strong.	COLOUR
20. He was one of the greatest of the Ede ethnic group.	ART

1. mountainous 2. specialities 3. unforgettable 4. southern
5. symbolises 6. entrance 7. Traditional 8. religious
9. colourful 10. artists

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C, or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Communal House (Rong House)

The Rong House can only be (1) in villages to the north of the Central Highlands, especially in Gia Lai and Kon Tum provinces. It is a large, imposing, beautifully decorated stilt house built (2) the middle of the village. It is where community activities (3), meetings, wedding ceremonies, or praying ceremonies. It is also the place for reception of guests. The Rong House of each ethnic group has its own architectural style, design, and décor. Yet there are shared (4) In the village, it is often (5) house roofed with yellow-dried thatch leaves and having 8 big wood columns. The rafters are decorated with patterns of bright colors, depicting religious scenes, legendary stories about ancient heroes, stylized animals and other familiar things of the village life. The most distinction of the decor of the Rong House is the (6)..... of the brilliant God of Sun. The Rong house is a (7) of the culture all of Central Highlanders, an age-old and stable culture. The bigger the house is, the wealthier the village is. It is a (8) of the whole village.

1. A. find	B. found	C. to find	D. finding
2. A. on	B. at	C. in	D. under
3. A. take place	B. take on	C. happens	D. occurs

4. A. designs	B. cultures	C. customs	D. features
5. A. a big	B. a bigger	C. the biggest	D. biggest
6. A. painting	B. photo	C. image	D. portrait
7. A. signal	B. symbol	C. sign	D. scence
8. A. design	B. respect	C. proud	D. pride

VII. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Duong Lam Village is located in Duong Lam commute at a 45 km distance from Hanoi. It is the birthplace of two kings in the history of Vietnam, Phung Hung (or Bo Cai Dai Vuong) and Ngo Quyen, who opened up the long-term self-control and independent period of Viet Nam after Bach Dang victory in the year 938.

All houses, gates, village gates and wells are built of laterite creating an architectural complex, a unique village that is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.

At present, there are still nearly 200 old houses and many other historical monuments such as Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Royal Tomb, Mong Phu Communal House, Ho Gam Hill at which Phung Hung killed tigers to rescue villagers and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

1. Where is Duong Lam village?

It is located in Duong Lam commute at a 45 km distance from Hanoi.

2. Who were the two kings whose birthplace is Duong Lam Village?

It is the birthplace of two kings in the history of Vietnam, Phung Hung (or Bo Cai Dai Vuong) and Ngo Quyen.

3. What is Duong Lam typical for?

It is typical for villages in the midlands in the North of Vietnam.

4. How many old houses as there in Duong Lam?

There are still nearly 200 old houses.

5. What are the famous historical monuments there?

Phung Hung Temple, Ngo Quyen Royal Tomb, Mong Phu Communal House, Ho Gam Hill, and the temple at which the diplomat Giang Van Minh is worshiped.

VIII. Read the following passage and choose the best answer.

The Sanchay Ethnic Group

Proper name: Sanchay

Other names: Honban, Chung, Trai

Population: 114,012 people

Local groups: Caolan and Sanchi

Language: The language of Caolan belongs to the Tay-Nung group (of the Kai-Kadai language family). and the language of the Sanchi belongs to the Handicrafts groups (of the Sino-Tibetan language family).

Production activities: The Sanchay are agricultural people who farm mainly wet rice paddies, but they also cultivate swidden fields which they prepare by the slash-and-burn method. They use the digging stick to make holes for seedlings. Fish catching plays an important role in the economic life as well. With their unique fishing tools, such as hand nets and woven baskets, fish catching supplies the Sanchay food and improves their daily meals.

Diet: The Sanchay eat mainly ordinary rice. They also drink a lot of wine especially during the Tet holidays or festivals. Men smoke Tobacco in a water pipe.

Closing: Sanchay women wear the Cham-style skirt and long shirt or tunic which is decorated around the bottom hem and on the back. For daily wear, Sanchay women wear one Cham-style cloth belt, but on special occasions, like the New Year festival, they wear two or three silk belts of different colors.

Housing: Sanchay live in the provinces of the northeast. They live in the stilt houses of a style similar to those of the Tay, who live in the same area.

Transportation: The Sanchay usually carry goods on a bag on their back like a backpack.

1. What is the population of the Sanchay people?

A. nearly 1,000,000 people

B. over 200,000 people

C. over 100,000 people

D. nearly 14,000 people

2. The Sanchay people use to make holes for seedlings.

A. digging sticks B. spades C. hand nets D. pipes

3. When do Sanchay women wear two or three silk belts?

A. every day B. at weekends C. on wet days D. on special occasions

4. The Sanchay people live in

A. modern flats B. stilt houses

C. northern provinces D. eastern provinces

5. Which of the following statements is NOT true?

A. The Sanchay mainly cultivate swidden fields.

B. The Sanchay use woven basket to catch fish.

C. The main food of the Sanchay is ordinary rice.

D. The Sanchay people carry goods on their back.

IX. Make questions for the underlined words of these answers.

1. Mr. Pha goes cutting wood in the forest once a month.

2. Artists from the Central Highlands will give cong performance in the festival.

3. My father bought a costume of the Bahnar at an open-air market in Kon Tum.

4. The Hani people live in Lai Chau and Lao Cai.
5. The Coho celebrate their New Year holidays in December.
6. It is 2 kilometers from here to the communal house.
7. The Thaiwomen's shawls are the most beautiful of all.
8. The visitors got to Sila village on foot.
9. My uncle has been Quang Nam to write an article about the Sedang.
10. Pao spent three months to make this musical instrument.

1. *How often does Mr. Pha goes cutting wood in the forest?*
2. *Who will give cong performance in the festival.*
3. *What did your father bought at an open-air market in Kon Tum?*
4. *Where do the Hani people live?*
5. *When do the Coho celebrate their New Year holidays?*
6. *How far is it from here to the communal house?*
7. *Whose shawls are the most beautiful of all?*
8. *How did the visitors get to Sila village?*
9. *Why has your uncle been to Quang Nam?/ What has your uncle been to Quang Nam for?*
10. *How long did Pao spend to make this musical instrument?*
11. *How many inhabitants does the Ha Nhi ethnic group have?*
12. *Where do they live?*
13. *Who do they worship?*
14. *What do they live on?*
15. *What do they use to work in the fields?*
16. *Where are the gardens?*

X. Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. What is the price of a dish of five-colored sticky rice?
How much is a dish of five-colored sticky rice?
2. Would do you mind carrying my basket for me, please?
Couldyoucarry my basket for me, please?
3. Why do some ethnic peoples build the communal house?
What do some ethnic peoples build the communal house for?
4. How long have you been an ethnologist?
When did you become an ethnologist?
5. Who do these beautiful ornaments belong to?
Whose are these beautiful ornaments?
Whose beautiful ornaments are these?

TEST_ Unit 3

I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. ancestor	B. curious	C. heritage	D. tradition
2. A. diversity	B. minority	C. socialize	D. addicted
3. A. buffalo	B. recognize	C. convenient	D. cultural
4. A. complicated	B. community	C. majority	D. communicate
5. A. satisfied	B. nomadic	C. generous	D. socialize

II. Put the words in the box into three groups.

<i>speak</i>	<i>basket</i>	<i>display</i>	<i>speech</i>	<i>space</i>
<i>school</i>	<i>state</i>	<i>spoon</i>	<i>stay</i>	<i>script</i>
<i>sky</i>	<i>style</i>	<i>step</i>	<i>skateboard</i>	<i>student</i>

/sk/	/sp/	/st/

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences

- Do you think the ethnicpeople have their own custom and traditions? (minor)
- Which ethnic group has the smallest in Vietnam? (populate)
- Some ethnic peoples in the mountainous regions still keep their way of farming. (tradition)
- Which do you think is more, the Tay's or Nung's costume? (colour)

5. If you go to Sa Pa, you should try some.....of the local people sold at the market . (special)

IV. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. Nick would like to know something about the groups of Vietnam when he visited the Museum of Ethnology.
A. culture B. cultural C. cultured D. culturology
2. He is surprisedthat there are 54 ethnic groups in our country.
A. to understand B. to study C. to know D. find
3. The Viet (or King) house have number of people, accounting for about 86% of the population.
A. large B. the large C. the largest D. larger
4. Nick was told that ethnic minority peoples have their own ways life and traditions.
A. of B. on C. in D. at
5. The terraced fields of Sa Pa have entered the Top 11 most beautiful terraces in the world according to Touropia.
A. in B. on C. at D. of
6. Gathering and hunting still play an important role in the of the Laha.
A. economic B. economy C. economical D. eonomize
- 7..... Ethnic group has a larger population, the Tay or the Ede?
A. what B. why C. which D. who
8. Ethnic peoples in the mountains have a simple way of farming. They use basic tools to the farm work.
A. check B. work C. make D. do
9. Many ethnic minority students have to along way to their schools every day.
A. travel B. ride C. pass D. get
10. People some far-away mountainous regions still keep their traditional way of life.
A. on B. in C. of D. at

V. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

boarding	ceremonies	communal	costume	culture
customs	display	diverse	ethnic	worship

1. The..... house is the biggest house in the village.
2. The Hoa'.....is more colorful than the Nung's.
3. Which group has a larger population, the Bru-Van Kieu or the Khmer?

4. Does the Yao have a rich..... of folk literature and art?
5. The Hmong people hold festivals and every year.
6. Like some other peoples, the Thai.....their ancestors.
7. Many ethnic minority students are studying at.....schools.
8. The peoples of Vietnam are.....but very peaceful.
9. The ethnic minorities peoples have their own and conditions.
10. The items onin The Museum of Ethnology are very interesting.

VI. Read the following passage and choose the best answer.

In Vietnam, a market is a trading place, but many markets are not only about buying and selling things. They reflect the life of the community. A traditional market is a social gathering point for people of all ages it is a new and exciting experience for children, a trading place for local craftsmen, and a chance for young people to meet. People go to the traditional market not only to buy and sell things but also to eat, drink, play games and socialize. For example, if you go to Sa Pa market, it is the highlands in the north of Viet Nam, you can see people wear then nicest clothes and spend all day long at the market. They buy things, play the flute, dance and sing. This is also a time to meet, my friends and look for lovers. That is why this kind of gathering is also called "love market". Some other countryside markets in the Mekong Delta are held on boats. Most of the goods are sold at a floating market. The most exciting time is in the early morning, when boats arrive loaded up with agricultural products.

1. In Vietnam, all markets are

A. only trading places

B. only about buying things

C. only about selling things

D. not only about buying and selling things

2. A traditional market is a social gathering point for.....

A. young people B. people of all ages

C. local craftsmen D. children

3. What can people do at the traditional market?

A. Sell and buy things only.

B. Buy and sell things, eat, drink and play games.

C. Buy things and eat.

D. Buy and sell things, eat, drink, play games and socialize.

4. What do ethnic group people who go to Sa Pa market do?

A. They wear their nicest clothes, buy things, play the flute, dance and sing.

- B. They ride on a horse and sing.
 - C. They drink a lot of wine and dance.
 - D. They buy the nicest clothes at the market and look for lovers.
5. Some of the markets in the Mekong Delta are held are called floating markets.
- A. along the roads B. on the paddy field
 - C. on boats D. in the morning

VII. Read the passage, and make questions for the underlined words of the following answers.

In 2006, the house of a local family in Dong Van District, Ha Giang Province was chosen for the background of the film "The story of Pao". From distance, the house looks beautiful as a painting. Bushes of wild but beautiful flowers in blossom on the right and an old leaning cherry blossom tree at the gate create a romantic scene for the house. The film is about the life of a H'mong girl named Pao. She was raised by her stepmother because her real mother left her when she was little. One day, her stepmother died in an accident, and she began to look for her birth mother.

1.

The house was chosen for the background of the film in 2006.

2.

The house is in Dong Van District, Ha Giang Province.

3.

The film is about the life of a H'mong girl named Pao.

4.

She was raised by her stepmother because her real mother left her when she was little.

5.....

She began to look for her birth mother when her stepmother died in an accident.

VIII. Make questions for the underlined words of these answers.

1. The Ha Nhi ethnic group has about 12,500 inhabitants.

2. They live in the provinces of Lai Chau and Lao Cai.

3. The Ha Nhi mainly worship their ancestors.

4. They live on rice cultivation of burnt-over land or terraced fields.

5. They use ploughs and harrows pulled by oxen and buffaloes to work in the fields.

6. The gardens are often close to their houses.

KEY TO TEST_ Unit 3

I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. ancestor	B. curious	C. heritage	D. tradition
2. A. diversity	B. minority	C. socialize	D. addicted
3. A. buffalo	B. recognize	C. convenient	D. cultural
4. A. complicated	B. community	C. majority	D. communicate
5. A. satisfied	B. nomadic	C. generous	D. socialize

II. Put the words in the box into three groups.

<i>speak</i>	<i>basket</i>	<i>display</i>	<i>speech</i>	<i>space</i>
<i>school</i>	<i>state</i>	<i>spoon</i>	<i>stay</i>	<i>script</i>
<i>sky</i>	<i>style</i>	<i>step</i>	<i>skateboard</i>	<i>student</i>

/sk/	/sp/	/st/
<i>basket</i>	<i>speak</i>	<i>state</i>
<i>script</i>	<i>display</i>	<i>stay</i>
<i>sky</i>	<i>speech</i>	<i>style</i>
<i>school</i>	<i>space</i>	<i>step</i>
<i>skateboard</i>	<i>spoon</i>	<i>student</i>

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences

1. Do you think the ethnicpeople have their own custom and traditions? (minor)
2. Which ethnic group has the smallest in Vietnam? (populate)

3. Some ethnic peoples in the mountainous regions still keep their way of farming. (tradition)
4. Which do you think is more, the Tay's or Nung's costume? (colour)
5. If you go to Sa Pa, you should try some.....of the local people sold at the market . (special)

1. *Minority*
2. *Population*
3. *Traditional*
4. *Colorful*
5. *specialties*

IV. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

11. Nick would like to know something about the groups of Vietnam when he visited the Museum of Ethnology.
A. culture **B. cultural** C. cultured D. culturology
12. He is surprised that there are 54 ethnic groups in our country.
A. to understand B. to study **C. to know** D. find
13. The Viet (or King) house have number of people, accounting for about 86% of the population.
A. large B. the large **C. the largest** D. larger
14. Nick was told that ethnic minority peoples have their own ways life and traditions.
A. of B. on C. in D. at
15. The terraced fields of Sa Pa have entered the Top 11 most beautiful terraces in the world according to Touropia.
A. in B. on C. at D. of
16. Gathering and hunting still play an important role in the of the Laha.
A. economic **B. economy** C. economical D. eonomize
- 17..... Ethnic group has a larger population, the Tay or the Ede?
A. what B. why **C. which** D. who
18. Ethnic peoples in the mountains have a simple way of farming. They use basic tools to the farm work.
A. check B. work C. make **D. do**
19. Many ethnic minority students have to along way to their schools every day.
A. travel B. ride C. pass D. get
20. People some far-away mountainous regions still keep their traditional way of life.
A. on **B. in** C. of D. at

V. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

boarding	ceremonies	communal	costume	culture
----------	------------	----------	---------	---------

customs	display	diverse	ethnic	worship
---------	---------	---------	--------	---------

1. communal 2. costume 3. ethnic 4. culture 5. ceremonies
6. worship 7. Boarding 8. Diverse 9. Customs 10. display

- Thehouse is the biggest house in the village.
- The Hoa' is more colorful than the Nung's.
- Which group has a larger population, the Bru-Van Kieu or the Khmer?
- Does the Yao have a richof folk literature and art?
- The Hmong people hold festivals andevery year.
- Like some other peoples, the Thai their ancestors.
- Many ethnic minority students are studying at schools.
- The peoples of Vietnam are but very peaceful.
- The ethnic minorities peoples have their own and conditions.
- The items onin The Museum of Ethnology are very interesting.

VI. Read the following passage and choose the best answer.

In Vietnam, a market is a trading place, but many markets are not only about buying and selling things. They reflect the life of the community. A traditional market is a social gathering point for people of all ages it is a new and exciting experience for children, a trading place for local craftsmen, and a chance for young people to meet. People go to the traditional market not only to buy and sell things but also to eat, drink, play games and socialize. For example, if you go to Sa Pa market, it is the highlands in the north of Viet Nam, you can see people wear then nicest clothes and spend all day long at the market. They buy things, play the flute, dance and sing. This is also a time to meet, my friends and look for lovers. That is why this kind of gathering is also called "love market". Some other countryside markets in the Mekong Delta are held on boats. Most of the goods are sold at a floating market. The most exciting time is in the early morning, when boats arrive loaded up with agricultural products.

1. In Vietnam, all markets are

A. only trading places

B. only about buying things

C. only about selling things

D. not only about buying and selling things

2. A traditional market is a social gathering point for.....

A. young people

B. people of all ages

C. local craftsmen D. children

3. What can people do at the traditional market?

A. Sell and buy things only.

B. Buy and sell things, eat, drink and play games.

C. Buy things and eat.

D. Buy and sell things, eat, drink, play games and socialize.

4. What do ethnic group people who go to Sa Pa market do?

A. They wear their nicest clothes, buy things, play the flute, dance and sing.

B. They ride on a horse and sing.

C. They drink a lot of wine and dance.

D. They buy the nicest clothes at the market and look for lovers.

5. Some of the markets in the Mekong Delta are held are called floating markets.

A. along the roads

B. on the paddy field

C. on boats

D. in the morning

VII. Read the passage, and make questions for the underlined words of the following answers.

In 2006, the house of a local family in Dong Van District, Ha Giang Province was chosen for the background of the film "The story of Pao". From distance, the house looks beautiful as a painting. Bushes of wild but beautiful flowers in blossom on the right and an old leaning cherry blossom tree at the gate create a romantic scene for the house. The film is about the life of a H'mong girl named Pao. She was raised by her stepmother because her real mother left her when she was little. One day, her stepmother died in an accident, and she began to look for her birth mother.

1. When was the house chosen for the background of the film?

The house was chosen for the background of the film in 2006.

2. Where is the house?

The house is in Dong Van District, Ha Giang Province.

3. What is the film about?

The film is about the life of a H'mong girl named Pao.

4. Why was she raised by her stepmother?

She was raised by her stepmother because her real mother left her when she was little.

5. When did she begin to look for her birth mother?

She began to look for her birth mother when her stepmother died in an accident.

VIII. Make questions for the underlined words of these answers.

1. The Ha Nhi ethnic group has about 12,500 inhabitants.
2. They live in the provinces of Lai Chau and Lao Cai.
3. The Ha Nhi mainly worship their ancestors.
4. They live on rice cultivation of burnt-over land or terraced fields.
5. They use ploughs and harrows pulled by oxen and buffaloes to work in the fields.
6. The gardens are often close to their houses.

1. *How many inhabitants does the Ha Nhi ethnic group have?*
2. *Where do they live?*
3. *Who do they worship?*
4. *What do they live on?*
5. *What do they use to work in the fields?*
6. *Where are the gardens?*

UNIT 4: OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS (E8)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

Custom (n) of Ving	/ˈkʌstəm/	Phong tục, tục lệ	You're kidding! (idiom)	/juə kɪdɪŋ/	Bạn cứ nói đùa thế thôi!
Tradition (n) Traditional (adj)	/trəˈdɪʃn/	Truyền thống	Mention (v)	/ˈmenʃn/	Đề cập
Accept (v) Accepted (adj)	/əkˈsept/	chấp nhận, nhận	Explain (v) Explanation (n)	/ɪkˈspleɪn/ /ˌekspləˈneɪʃn/	Giải thích Sự giải thích
Special (adj)	/ˈspeʃl/	Đặc biệt	Compliment (n)	/ˈkɒmplɪmənt/	Lời khen
Generation (n)	/ˌdʒenəˈreɪʃn/	Thế hệ	Worship (v) Worship area (n phr)	/ˈwɜːʃɪp/	Thờ cúng, cúng bái
Pass down (v)	/pɑːs daʊn/	Truyền cho	Ancestor (n)	/ˈænsesə(r)/	Tổ tiên
Spot on (adj)	/spɒt ɒn/	Chính xác	Wrap (v)	/ræp/	Đóng gói
Sharp (adj)	/ʃɑːp/	chính xác, đúng	spray (v)	/spreɪ/	Xịt
Social (adj) Society (n)	/ˈsəʊʃl/	Thuộc về xã hội	Stand in a row (verb phrase)		Đứng thành một hàng

Table manner(s) (n)	/ˈteɪbl 'mænə(r)/	quy tắc ăn uống trong bàn ăn	Lucky money		Tiền mừng tuổi
Presentation (n) Present (v)	/ˌprezn'teɪʃn/	Bài thuyết trình	Christian (adj)	/ˈkrɪstʃən/	Thuộc cơ đốc
Information (n)	/ˌɪnfə'meɪʃn/	Thông tin	Step into one's house (v phrase)		Bước vào nhà ai
Sponge cake (n)	/spʌndʒ/	Bánh xốp	Mid-Autumn Festival (n)		Tết Trung Thu
Mooncake		Bánh Trung Thu	Break with tradition by Ving (v ph)	/breɪk wɪð/	Không theo truyền thống
Follow (v)	/ˈfɒləʊ/	Đi theo, theo sau	Express (v)	/ɪk'spres/	Diễn tả, thể hiện
Fireworks (n)	/ˈfaɪəwɜ:k/	Pháo hoa	Firecrackers (n)	/ˈfaɪəkrækə(r)/	Quả pháo nổ
Decorate (v) Decoration (n)	/ˈdekəreɪt/	Trang trí	Live with sb (v phr)		Sống cùng ai
Touch one's head (v ph)		Chạm vào đầu ai	Strictly (adv) Strict (adj)	/ˈstriktli/	Nghiêm khắc
Spread (v)	/spred/	Lan truyền	Community (n)	/kə'mju:nəti/	Cộng đồng
District (n)	/ˈdɪstrɪkt/	Quận	Resident (n)	/ˈrezɪdənt/	Cư dân
Sweep (v)	/swi:p/	quét	Filmstrip (n)	/ˈfɪlmstri:p/	đoạn phim
Highlight (v)	/ˈhaɪlaɪt/	Nhấn mạnh, làm nổi bật	Offspring (n)	/ˈɒfsprɪŋ/	Con cái
Take off (v phr)		Cởi bỏ	Entrance (n)	/ˈentrəns/	Lối vào
Ask for permission (v phr)	/pə'mɪʃn/	Xin phép			
Unity	/ˈju:nəti/	Sự thống nhất	Temple (n)	/ˈtempl/	Đền
Tip (v,n)	/tɪp/	Boa, tiền boa	Necessary (adj)	/ˈnesəsəri/	Cần thiết
Be excited about sth/ Ving Exciting (adj) excitement	/ɪk'saɪtɪd/	Cảm thấy thích thú về cái gì	Amazing (adj) Amazed (adj) Amazement (n) Amazingly (adv)	/ə'meɪzɪŋ/	Ngạc nhiên
Prepare for (v phr) Preparation (n)	/prɪ'peə(r)/	Chuẩn bị	Slippers (n)	/ˈslɪpə(r)/	Dép đi trong nhà
Extra (adj)	/ˈekstrə/	Thêm	Get used to sth/ Ving (v phr)		Quen với việc làm gì
Host/ hostess (n)	/həʊst/ /həʊstəs/	Chủ nhà nam Chủ nhà nữ	Prong (n)	/prɒŋ/	Đầu đũa (phần có

					răng)
Cutlery (n)	/'kʌtləri/	bộ đồ ăn (gồm thìa, dĩa, dao)	Palm (n)	/pɑ:m/	Lòng bàn tay
Tray (n)	/treɪ/	Cái khay	Mat (n)	/mæt/	Thảm chùi chân
Upward(s) (adj/ adv)	/'ʌpwədz/	Hướng lên trên	Main course		Món chính
Dessert (n)	/dɪ'zɜ:t/	Món tráng miệng	Place (v) sth in/ on sth		Đặt cái gì vào trong/ trên cái gì
Pass(v) sb sth	/pɑ:s/	Chuyển cái gì cho ai	Serve (v) Serving (adj)	/sɜ:v/	Phục vụ
Spoon (n)	/spu:n/	thìa	Folk (n)	/fəʊk/	Dĩa
clockwise (adv)	/ kɒkwaɪz/	theo chiều kim đồng hồ	Knife (n)	/naɪf/	Dao
Course (n)	/kɔ:s/	Món ăn	oblige (v)	/ə'blaɪdʒ/	bắt buộc
reflect (v)	/rɪ'fl ekt/	phản ánh	sense of belonging (n)	/sens əv bɪ'lɒŋɪŋ/	Cảm giác thân thuộc

II. Grammar:

*Modal Verbs:

- Should and shouldn't to express advice

(+) should + infinitive

(-) shouldn't + infinitive

(?) Should + subject + infinitive?

- Have to to express obligation or necessity. It shows external obligation, i.e., someone else makes a decision about what you must do.

(+) have to/ has to + infinitive

(-) don't/ doesn't have to + infinitive

(?) Do/ Does + subject + have to + infinitive?

Notes: Don't have to is used when it is not necessary to do st.

- Mustn't to tell somebody not to do st as an obligation.

B. EXERCISES

I. Underline the words with /spr/ and circle the words with /str/. Read the sentences.

1. The Strawberry festival has been a tradition at New York University for 20 years.
2. Parents don't want their children to talk to strangers.
3. Espresso is served for free in the festival.
4. This is a difficult word, so a lot of people mispronounce it.

5. This is one-way street. You mustn't drive into it.
6. On Space Day, we invited an astronaut to our school to give a talk.

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

- | | | | |
|----------------|--------------|---------------|-------------|
| 1. A. stripe | B. string | C. spring | D. trip |
| 2. A. honey | B. donkey | C. money | D. survey |
| 3. A. suitable | B. situation | C. regulation | D. customer |
| 4. A. youth | B. cloth | C. bathe | D. month |
| 5. A. washed | B. handed | C. laughed | D. helped |

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. I'm so _____ about your trip. It's going to be amazing. (excite)
2. Ao dai is our _____ dress. We wear it every Monday at school. (tradition)
3. In Viet Nam, we usually wait for the _____ person to sit down before you sit down. (old)
4. After _____ food from the plate, you should put it into your bowl before eating. (take)
5. What is the _____ between a custom and a tradition? (similar)

IV. Read the interview between the reporter (R) and Tobey Maguire (TM), the actor who plays Spiderman, and complete it with the correct past form of "have to". Practise the conversation with your partner.

R: Was Spiderman a difficult part to play?

TM: Yes, I (1. be) _____ fit so I (2. train) _____ for six months before the film started.

R: What time (3. you/be) _____ at the film studio in the morning?

TM: I (4. start) _____ at six o'clock. Too early!

R: (5. you/ wear) _____ the Spiderman costume all day?

TM: Almost all day! But I (6. not wear) _____ it when I was playing Peter Park, of course. Then I had normal clothes.

R: Was it scary to climb all those buildings?

TM: Well, I (7. not climb) _____ the really tall buildings. They use computer effects for that.

R: Have you ever seen the film at the cinema yet?

TM: Yes, I took my daughter to see it. It was cool because the cashier recognized me and we (8. not pay) _____!

V. Fill one suitable word in each blank to complete the passage.

Jeans are very popular with young people all (1) _____ the world. Some people say that jeans are the "uniform" of youth. But they haven't always been (2) _____. The story of jeans started almost two hundred years (3) _____. People in Genoa, Italy made pants. The

clothe made in Genoa(4)_____called " jeansos". The pants were called "jeans". In 1850, a salesman in Califonia began selling pants made (5)_____canvas. His name was Levi Strauss. Because they were so strong, "Levi's pants became popular (6)_____gold miners, farmers and cowboys. Six year (7)_____, Levis began making his pants with blue cotton cloth (8)_____denim. Soon after, factory workers (9)_____the United States and Europe began (10)_____jeans. Young people usually didn't wear them.

VI. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D to finish the sentences.

1. You_____miss any of the meetings. They're always very useful.
A. needn't B. should C. shouldn't D. can
2. She is famous_____her intelligence. She designs many special styles for *Ao dai*.
A. in B. for C. with D. into
3. I think someone_____talk to the boss. We can't work extra hours on Saturday.
A. have to B. should C. don't have to D. shouldn't
4. We reached the house after_____for almost an hour.
A. cycled B. to cycle C. cycling D. cycle
5. At school, the teachers and students_____follow the rules.
A. has to B. have to C. need to D. haven't to
6. He_____try to be a bit more punctual. It's rude to be late here.
A. shouldn't B. should C. couldn't D. was able to
7. Would you like to go_____a walk_____the park this afternoon?
A. to - at B. for – at C. to - in D. for - in
8. The buses were very_____this morning. We can't go to the church with you in time.
A. crowd B. crowded C. full D. busy
9. We_____wear uniform at school from Monday to Saturday. That's a good way and equal to everyone.
A. have to B. haven't to C. could D. must
10. Anna_____change her hair style because the old one doesn't suit her any more.
A. could B. has to C. have to D. doesn't have to

VII. Find a mistake with have to, should or must in each sentence and correct it.

1. Under the new regulations, workers have wear protective clothes.
2. When you come to Brazil, you should to tip the waiter 10% of the bill.
3. When eating in India, you shouldn't always use the right hand. Never use the left hand.
4. In Australia, you mustn't to comment on a person's accent.
5. In my family, children has to get permission before leaving the dining table.
6. When we were young, we have to stand in a row to greet guests.

VIII. Choose the correct word marked A, B, C, or D to fill each blank in the following email.

Hi Nick,

Great to receive your email. Because you'll be here soon, I'd like to share with my family customs and traditions. Well, we have the custom (1)_____spending Saturdays together. You may ask why not Sundays. It's simply because my mum works on Sundays. On Saturdays, we always (2)_____ out. Sometimes we visit our grandparents in Vung Tau. Sometimes we go on a (3)_____ in the park or a nearby beauty spot.

You asked me about the Tet holiday, right? There's a (4)_____that we make tet cake and cook braised pork and eggs (thit kho trung). Tet cake is similar to chung cake in Ha Noi, but it's long, not square. Braised pork and eggs is our traditional (5)_____for Tet. It's so delicious! When you (6)_____here, my mum will cook it for you.

What about your family? Share with me the customs and traditions you follow.

Cheers,

Ha

- | | | | |
|-----------------|------------|----------|---------------|
| 1. A. for | B. of | C. in | D. on |
| 2. A. stay | B. put | C. find | D. go |
| 3. A. trip | B. picnic | C. camp | D. day |
| 4. A. tradition | B. customs | C. thing | D. regulation |
| 5. A. thing | B. taste | C. dish | D. jam |
| 6. A. go | B. leave | C. come | D. depart |

IX. Read a passage about Italian pizza and do the tasks that follow.

Pizza is a traditional Italian dish. It's popular not only in Italy but around the world.

Naples, a city in southern Italy, is believed to be the birthplace of pizza. It's well-known for the most

delicious pizza anywhere. The first pizzeria was built in Naples in 1830 at Port'Alba.

The ancestor of the modern pizza is the simple flat bread. It's the food of the poor. The truly modern pizza we eat today starts with the Margherita pizza. In 1889, Queen Margherita went on a trip to Naples. She heard about pizza and asked to try it. Don Raffaele Esposito, the most famous pizza maker, was asked to prepare it. He prepared two traditional and one new type of pizza, but the Queen liked the new one topped with tomatoes, Mozzarella cheese and fresh basil the best. She thought that the colours of this pizza represented the colours of the Italian flag – red, white, and green. This pizza was then called "Margherita".

✓ Write true (T) or false (F)

1. Naples is considered the place where pizza was born. _____
2. At first, pizza was a dish for the King and Queen. _____
3. Margherita was one of the two traditional types of pizza that were prepared for the Queen. _____
4. Don Raffaele Esposito was the most famous pizza maker in Naples. _____
5. Margherita pizza was named after the Queen. _____

✓ **Answer the questions.**

1. When was the first pizzeria built?

.....
.....

2. What is the ancestor of the modern pizza?

.....
.....

3. How many kinds of pizza were made for the Queen?

.....
.....

4. What are the ingredients of the Margherita pizza topping?

.....
.....

5. Why does Margherita pizza represent Italy?

.....
.....

X. Make sentences, using the words and phrases provided. You can add some words or make changes.

1. Tipping/ not/ custom/ Viet Nam/ so/ you/ not/ have/ tip/ if/ don't want.

.....
.....

2. However/ some/ people/ tip/ because/ they/ think/ service/ good.

.....
.....

3. In/ countries/ tipping/ be/ usual/ thing.

.....
.....

4. For example/ in/ US/ people/ tip/ 15/ 20 per cent/ of/ bill/ in/ restaurant/ café.

.....
.....

5. Reason/ be/ in/ US/ waiter/ waitress/ be/ pay/ less/ minimum wage.

.....
.....
6. In/ Brazil/ standard/ tip/ in/ restaurant/ be/ 10 per cent.
.....
.....

7. However/ this/ be/ usually/ include/ in/ bill.
.....
.....

8. At/ hotel/ 10/ 15 per cent/ service charge/ be/ include/ in/ bill.
.....
.....

XI. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. We have to use knife and fork _____ dinner.
2. There's a British tradition _____ having afternoon tea at 4 p.m.
3. She was very conscious _____ her lack of experience on her first day at work.
4. He has a new solution _____ the problem.
5. Nobody helped him. He managed it _____ his own.
6. The drivers _____ London kept their cars _____ the left.
7. The summer holiday is coming. We are all excited _____ going _____ a long trip _____ the South.
8. The children were amazed _____ the lion show at the circus.
9. Her small garden looks very beautiful in spring because all the flowers are _____ full bloom.
10. In our district, it's the custom _____ residents to sweep the streets on Saturday mornings.

XII. Writing: Your friend from the UK is visiting your house. Read her email and reply to it.

From: sophia@fastmail.uk

To: ngoc@quickmail.com

Subject: Your family customs and traditions

Hi Ngoc,

Thanks for inviting me to your house. I'm really happy because it's the first time for me to visit a Vietnamese house.
Can you tell me some customs and traditions you follow in your family?
Cheers,
Sophia.

From: ngoc@quickmail.com
To: sophia@fastmail.uk
Subject: Your family customs and tradition

Hello Sophia,
Glad that you've accepted my invitation. There are some customs and traditions in my family.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

However, don't worry about these because you're our special guest.
Bye for now,
Ngoc

KEY TO OUR CUSTOMS AND TRADITIONS(UNIT 4)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

Custom(s) (n) of Ving -It's the custom for sb to do st -There is a custom of Ving Custome (n)	/ˈkʌstəm/	Phong tục, tục lệ	You're kidding! (idiom)	/jʊə kɪdɪŋ/	Bạn cứ nói đùa thế thôi!
Tradition(s) (n) -Follow the tradition of Ving -There's a tradition that + Cl/ of Ving	/trəˈdɪʃn/	Truyền thống			
Accept (v) Accepted (PP_adj)	/əkˈsept/	chấp nhận, nhận	Explain (v) Explanation (n)	/ɪkˈspleɪn/ /ˌekspləˈneɪʃn/	Giải thích Sự giải thích
Special (adj)	/ˈspeʃl/	Đặc biệt	Compliment (n)	/ˈkɒmplɪmənt/	Lời khen
Generation(s) (n)	/ˌdʒenəˈreɪʃn/	Thế hệ	Worship (v) Worship area (n phr)	/ˈwɜːʃɪp/	Thờ cúng, cúng bái
Pass down (v)	/paːs daʊn/	Truyền cho	Ancestors (n)	/ˈænsəstə(r)/	Tổ tiên
Spot on (adj)	/spɒt ɒn/	Chính xác	Wrap (v)	/ræp/	Đóng gói
Sharp (adj)	/ʃɑːp/	chính xác, đúng	spray (v)	/spreɪ/	Xịt
Mention (v)	/ˈmenʃn/	Đề cập			
Social (adj)	/ˈsəʊʃl/	Thuộc về xã hội	Stand in a row (verb phrase)		Đứng thành một hàng
Table manner(s) (n)	/ˈteɪbl ˈmænə(r)/	quy tắc ăn uống trong bàn ăn, phép tắc ăn uống	Lucky money		Tiền mừng tuổi
Presentation (n)	/ˌpreznˈteɪʃn/	Bài thuyết trình	Christian (adj)	/ˈkrɪstʃən/	
Information (n)	/ˌɪnfəˈmeɪʃn/	Thông tin	Step into one's house (v phrase)		Bước vào nhà ai

Sponge cake(s) (n)	/spʌndʒ/		Mid-Autumn Festival (n)		Tết Trung Thu
Mooncake(s)		Bánh Trung Thu	Break with tradition by Ving (v ph)	/breɪk wɪð/	Không theo
Follow (v)	/ˈfɒləʊ/	Đi theo, theo sau	Express (v)	/ɪk'spres/	Diễn tả, thể hiện
Fireworks (n)	/ˈfaɪəwɜ:k/	Pháo hoa	Firecrackers (n)	/ˈfaɪəkrækə(r)/	Quả pháo nổ
Decorate (v) Decoration (n)	/ˈdekəreɪt/	Trang trí			
Touch one's head (v ph)		Chạm vào đầu ai	Strictly (adv) Strict (adj)	/ˈstriktli/	Nghiêm khắc
Spread (v)	/spred/	Lan truyền	Community (n)	/kə'mju:nəti/	Cộng đồng
District (n)	/ˈdɪstrɪkt/	Quận	Resident(s) (n)	/ˈrezɪdənt/	Cư dân
Sweep (v)	/swi:p/	quét	Filmstrip (n)	/ˈfɪlmstri:p/	đoạn phim
Highlight (v)	/ˈhaɪlaɪt/	Nhấn mạnh, làm nổi bật	Offspring (n)	/ˈɒfsprɪŋ/	Con cái
Take off (v phr)		Cởi bỏ	Entrance (n)	/ˈentrəns/	Lối vào
Ask for permission (v phr)	/pə'mɪʃn/	Xin phép			
Unity	/ˈju:nəti/	Sự thống nhất, sự đoàn kết	Temple (n)	/ˈtempl/	Đền
Tip (v,n)	/tɪp/	Boa, tiền boa	Necessary (adj)	/ˈnesəsəri/	Cần thiết
Live with sb (v phr)		Sống cùng ai			
Be excited about sth/ Ving Exciting (adj) excitement	/ɪk'saɪtɪd/	Cảm thấy thích thú về cái gì	Amazing (adj) Amazed (adj) Amazement (n) Amazingly (adv)	/əˈmeɪzɪŋ/	Ngạc nhiên
Prepare for (v phr) Preparation (n)	/prɪˈpeə(r)/	Chuẩn bị	Slippers (n)	/ˈslɪpə(r)/	Đép đi trong nhà
Extra (adj)	/ˈekstrə/	Thêm	Get used to sth/ Ving (v phr)		Quen với việc làm gì
Host/ hostess (n)	/həʊst/ /həʊstəs/	Chủ nhà nam Chủ nhà	Prong (n)	/prɒŋ/	Đầu đũa (phần có răng)

		nữ			
Cutlery (n)	/ˈkʌtləri/	bộ đồ ăn (gồm th.á, đĩa, dao)	Palm (n)	/pɑ:m/	Lòng bàn tay
Tray (n)	/treɪ/	Cái khay đựng thức ăn	Mat (n)	/mæt/	Thảm chùi chân
Upward(s) (adj/ adv)	/ˈʌpwədz/	Hướng lên trên	Main course (comp noun)		Món chính
Dessert (n)	/dɪˈzɜ:t/	Món tráng miệng	Place (v) sth in/ on sth		Đặt cái gì vào trong/ trên cái gì
Pass(v) sb sth	/pɑ:s/	Chuyển cái gì cho ai	Serve (v) Serving (adj)	/sɜ:v/	Phục vụ
Spoon (n)	/spu:n/	thìa	Folk (n)	/fəʊk/	Dĩa
clockwise (adv)	/ˈkɒkwaɪz/	theo chiều kim đồng hồ	Knife (n)	/naɪf/	Dao
Course (n)	/kɔ:s/	Món ăn	oblige (v)	/əˈblaɪdʒ/	bắt buộc
reflect (v)	/rɪˈfl ekt/	phản ánh	sense of belonging (n)	/sens əv brɪˈlɒŋɪŋ/	Cảm giác thân thuộc

II. Grammar:

*Modal Verbs:

- Should and shouldn't to express advice

(+) should + infinitive

(-) shouldn't + infinitive

(?) Should + subject + infinitive?

- Have to to express obligation or necessity. It shows external obligation, i.e., someone else makes a decision about what you must do.

(+) have to/ has to + infinitive

(-) don't/ doesn't have to + infinitive

(?) Do/ Does + subject + have to + infinitive?

Notes: Don't have to is used when it is not necessary to do st.

- Mustn't to tell somebody not to do st as an obligation.

B. EXERCISES

I. Underline the words with /spr/ and circle the words with /str/. Read the sentences.

1. The **Strawberry** festival has been a tradition at New York University for 20 years.

2. Parents don't want their children to talk to **strangers**.

3. **Espresso** is served for free in the festival.

4. This is a difficult word, so a lot of people **mispronounce** it.
5. This is one-way **street**. You mustn't drive into it.
6. On Space Day, we invited an **astronaut** to our school to give a talk.

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|-------------------------|------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. A. stripe | B. string | C. spring | D. trip |
| 2. A. hone <u>y</u> | B. donk <u>e</u> y | C. mon <u>e</u> y | D. survey |
| 3. A. suit <u>a</u> ble | B. situ <u>a</u> tion | C. regulat <u>i</u> on | D. c<u>u</u>stomer |
| 4. A. youth <u>u</u> | B. cloth <u>u</u> | C. bat<u>h</u>e | D. month <u>u</u> |
| 5. A. wash <u>e</u> d | B. hand<u>e</u>d | C. laugh <u>e</u> d | D. help <u>e</u> d |

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. I'm so _____ about your trip. It's going to be amazing. (excite)
2. Ao dai is our _____ dress. We wear it every Monday at school. (tradition)
3. In Viet Nam, we usually wait for the _____ person to sit down before you sit down. (old)
4. After _____ food from the plate, you should put it into your bowl before eating. (take)
5. What is the _____ between a custom and a tradition? (similar)

1. exciting
2. traditional
3. eldest
4. taking
5. similarity

IV. Read the interview between the reporter (R) and Tobey Maguire (TM), the actor who plays Spiderman, and complete it with the correct past form of "have to". Practise the conversation with your partner.

R: Was Spiderman a difficult part to play?

TM: Yes, I (1. be) _____ fit so I (2. train) _____ for six months before the film started.

R: What time (3. you/be) _____ at the film studio in the morning?

TM: I (4. start) _____ at six o'clock. Too early!

R: (5. you/ wear) _____ the Spiderman costume all day?

TM: Almost all day! But I (6. not wear) _____ it when I was playing Peter Park, of course. Then I had normal clothes.

R: Was it scary to climb all those buildings?

TM: Well, I (7. not climb) _____ the really tall buildings. They use computer effects for that.

R: Have you ever seen the film at the cinema yet?

TM: Yes, I took my daughter to see it. It was cool because the cashier recognized me and we (8. not pay)_____!

1. had to be
2. had to train
3. did you have to be
4. had to start
5. Did you have to wear
6. didn't have to wear
7. didn't have to climb
8. didn't have to pay

V. Fill one suitable word in each blank to complete the passage.

Jeans are very popular with young people all (1)_____ **over** the world. Some people say that jeans are the "uniform" of youth. But they haven't always been (2)_____ **popular**. The story of jeans started almost two hundred years (3)_____ **ago**. People in Genoa, Italy made pants. The clothes made in Genoa (4)_____ **was** called "jeans". The pants were called "jeans". In 1850, a salesman in California began selling pants made (5)_____ **of** canvas. His name was Levi Strauss. Because they were so strong, "Levi's" pants became popular (6)_____ **with** gold miners, farmers and cowboys. Six years (7)_____ **later**, Levis began making his pants with blue cotton cloth (8)_____ **called** denim. Soon after, factory workers (9)_____ **in** the United States and Europe began (10)_____ **wearing** jeans. Young people usually didn't wear them.

VI. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D to finish the sentences.

1. You_____miss any of the meetings. They're always very useful.
A. needn't B. should C. **shouldn't** D. can
2. She is famous_____her intelligence. She designs many special styles for *Ao dai*.
A. in B. **for** C. with D. into
3. I think someone_____talk to the boss. We can't work extra hours on Saturday.
A. have to B. **should** C. don't have to D. shouldn't
4. We reached the house after_____for almost an hour.
A. cycled B. to cycle C. **cycling** D. cycle
5. At school, the teachers and students_____follow the rules.
A. has to B. **have to** C. need to D. haven't to
6. He_____try to be a bit more punctual. It's rude to be late here.
A. shouldn't B. **should** C. couldn't D. was able to
7. Would you like to go_____a walk_____the park this afternoon?
A. to - at B. for - at C. to - in D. **for - in**
8. The buses were very_____this morning. We can't go to the church with you in time.

- A. crowd **B. crowded** C. full D. busy
9. We _____ wear uniform at school from Monday to Saturday. That's a good way and equal to everyone.
- A. have to** B. haven't to C. could D. must
10. Anna _____ change her hair style because the old one doesn't suit her any more.
- A. could **B. has to** C. have to D. doesn't have to

VII. Find a mistake with have to, should or must in each sentence and correct it.

1. Under the new regulations, workers have wear protective clothes.
 2. When you come to Brazil, you should to tip the waiter 10% of the bill.
 3. When eating in India, you shouldn't always use the right hand. Never use the left hand.
 4. In Australia, you mustn't to comment on a person's accent.
 5. In my family, children has to get permission before leaving the dining table.
 6. When we were young, we have to stand in a row to greet guests.
1. have to wear
 2. should tip
 3. should always
 4. mustn't comment
 5. have to
 6. had to

VIII. Choose the correct word marked A, B, C, or D to fill each blank in the following email.

Hi Nick,

Great to receive your email. Because you'll be here soon, I'd like to share with my family customs and traditions. Well, we have the custom (1)_____ spending Saturdays together. You may ask why not Sundays. It's simply because my mum works on Sundays. On Saturdays, we always (2)_____ out. Sometimes we visit our grandparents in Vung Tau. Sometimes we go on a (3)_____ in the park or a nearby beauty spot.

You asked me about the Tet holiday, right? There's a (4)_____ that we make tet cake and cook braised pork and eggs (thit kho trung). Tet cake is similar to chung cake in Ha Noi, but it's long, not square. Braised pork and eggs is our traditional (5)_____ for Tet. It's so delicious! When you (6)_____ here, my mum will cook it for you.

What about your family? Share with me the customs and traditions you follow.

Cheers,

Ha

- | | | | |
|------------------------|------------------|----------------|---------------|
| 1. A. for | B. of | C. in | D. on |
| 2. A. stay | B. put | C. find | D. go |
| 3. A. trip | B. picnic | C. camp | D. day |
| 4. A. tradition | B. customs | C. thing | D. regulation |
| 5. A. thing | B. taste | C. dish | D. jam |

6. A. go

B. leave

C. corne

D. depart

IX. Read a passagge about Italian pizza and do the tasks that follow.

Pizza is a traditional Italian dish. It's popular not only in Italy but around the world.

Naples, a city in southern Italy, is believed to be the birthplace of pizza. It's well-known for the most

delicious pizza anywhere. The first pizzeria was built in Naples in 1830 at Port'Alba.

The ancestor of the modern pizza is the simple flat bread. It's the food of the poor. The truly modern pizza we eat today starts with the Margherita pizza. In 1889, Queen Margherita went on a trip to Naples. She heard about pizza and asked to try it. Don Raffaele Esposito, the most famous pizza maker, was asked to prepare it. He prepared two traditional and one new type of pizza, but the Queen liked the new one topped with tomatoes, Mozzarella cheese and freash basil the best. She thought that the colours of this pizza represented the colours of the Italian flag – red, white, and green. This pizza was then called "Margherita".

✓ **Write true (T) or false (F)**

1. Naples is considered the place where pizza was born. _____
2. At first, pizza was a dish for the King and Queen. _____
3. Margherita was one of the two traditional types of pizza that were prepared for the Queen. _____
4. Don Raffaele Esposito was the most famous pizza marker in Naples. _____
5. Margherita pizza was named after the Queen. _____

✓ **Answer the questions.**

1. When was the first pizzeria built?

It was built in 1830

2. What is the ancestor of the modern pizza?

It's the flat bread

3. How many kinds of pizza were made for the Queen?

Three kinds of pizza were made for the Queen.

4. What are the ingredients of the Margherita pizza topping?

They are tomatoes, Mozzarella cheese, and fresh basil.

5. Why does Margherita pizza represent Italy?

Because it has the colours of the Italian flag.

X. Make sentences, using the words and phrases provided. You can add some words or make changes.

1. Tipping/ not/ custom/ Viet Nam/ so/ you/ not/ have/ tip/ if/ don't want.

Tipping is not a custom in Viet Nam, so you don't have to tip if you don't want to.

2. However/ some/ people/ tip/ because/ they/ think/ service/ good.

However, some people tip because they think the service is good.

3. In/ countries/ tipping/ be/ usual/ thing.

In some countries, tipping is a usual thing.

4. For example/ in/ US/ people/ tip/ 15/ 20 per cent/ of/ bill/ in/ restaurant/ café.

For example, in the US people tip 15 to 20 per cent of the bill in restaurants or cafes.

5. Reason/ be/ in/ US/ waiter/ waitress/ be/ pay/ less/ minimum wage.

The reason is that in the US waiters and waitresses are paid less than the minimum wage.

6. In/ Brazil/ standard/ tip/ in/ restaurant/ be/ 10 per cent.

In Brazil, the standard tip in restaurants is 10 per cent.

7. However/ this/ be/ usually/ include/ in/ bill.

However, this is usually included in the bill.

8. At/ hotel/ 10/ 15 per cent/ service charge/ be/ include/ in/ bill.

At hotels, a 10 to 15 per cent service charge is included in the bill.

XI. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions.

1. We have to use knife and fork _____ dinner.

2. There's a British tradition _____ having afternoon tea at 4 p.m.

3. She was very conscious _____ her lack of experience on her first day at work.

4. He has a new solution _____ the problem.

5. Nobody helped him. He managed it _____ his own.

6. The drivers _____ London kept their cars _____ the left.

7. The summer holiday is coming. We are all excited _____ going _____ a long trip _____ the South.

8. The children were amazed _____ the lion show at the circus.

9. Her small garden looks very beautiful in spring because all the flowers are _____ full bloom.

10. In our district, it's the custom_____residents to sweep the streets on Saturday mornings.

1. at

2. of

3. of

4. to

5. on

6. in – to

7. about – on – to

8. at

9. in

10. for

XII. Writing: Your friend from the UK is visiting your house. Read her email and reply to it.

From: sophia@fastmail.uk

To: ngoc@quickmail.com

Subject: Your family customs and traditions

Hi Ngoc,

Thanks for inviting me to your house. I'm really happy because it's the first time for me to visit a Vietnamese house.

Can you tell me some customs and traditions you follow in your family?

Cheers,

Sophia.

From: ngoc@quickmail.com

To: sophia@fastmail.uk

Subject: Your family customs and tradition

Hello Sophia,

Glad that you've accepted my invitation. There are some customs and traditions in my family.

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

.....

However, don't worry about these because you're our special guest.

Bye for now,

Ngoc

TEST (MID-TERM)

A. READING

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

1. A. spring B. stripe C. strict D. newsprint
2. A. stranger B. sprag C. astronaut D. misprogramme
3. A. espresso B. pedestrain C. strength D. respray
4. A. stroll B. overspread C. disprove D. stroke
5. A. sprung B. frustrate C. structure D. spruce

II. Rewrite these imperatives so that they have opposite meaning to the originals.

Break	chopsticks	custom	generations	manners
Residents	respect	shoes	tradition	worshipping

1. In Viet Nam, we follow the tradition of _____ the ancestors.
2. You should take off your _____ before going into a Japanese house.
3. In my family there is a _____ of having dinner together at 7.30 sharp.
4. We shouldn't _____ with this tradition because it reflects our culture and lifestyle.
5. You should place the _____ on top of the rice bowl when you finish a meal in Viet Nam.
6. There is a British _____ of having afternoon tea at 4 p.m.
7. We cook five-coloured sticky rice on the first of every lunar month, and our family has followed this tradition for _____.
8. According to our tradition, you should _____ old people.
9. In our community, it's the custom for the _____ to clean the streets on Sunday mornings.
10. You should learn about British table _____ so you can feel comfortable at dinner.

III. Complete the sentences with have to, has to, don't have to, or doesn't have to.

1. It's Sunday, so the children _____ go to school.
2. Minh _____ study for a test, so he is going to stay at home.
3. Your shoes are dirty. You _____ clean them.

4. I _____ take an umbrella. It isn't raining.
5. Peter _____ get up early. It's his holiday.
6. It's very informal here. You _____ wear a tie unless you want to.
7. Jane _____ tidy her room. It is a mess.
8. The train is direct. Your brother _____ change trains.
9. In Britain, everyone _____ pay in pounds.
10. Help yourself to anything you want. You _____ ask.

IV. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. My family _____ the tradition of cooking sticky rice on the first day of a lunar month.
A. discovers B. allows C. follows D. advises
2. When having meals with a British family, you should never chew with your _____ open.
A. hand B. eye C. finger D. mouth
3. We enjoy our family customs and traditions because they provide us with a sense of _____.
A. belonging B. missing C. worrying D. surrounding
4. The xoe dance is a _____ tradition of Thai ethnic people.
A. physical B. spiritual C. material D. practical
5. In Japan when bowing, you _____ your appreciation and respect to other person.
A. prepare B. suggest C. open D. express
6. You _____ use your mobile phone on the plane.
A. must B. mustn't C. don't have to D. have to
7. He _____ cross the street when the traffic light is green for pedestrians.
A. should B. shouldn't C. ought D. oughtn't
8. It's optional. We _____ go if you don't want.
A. have to B. don't have to C. mustn't D. must
9. She's always tired. She _____ go to bed late every night.
A. can B. can't C. should D. shouldn't

10. My brother_____work late tonight. His boss ordered him to stay until 10.00.

A. must

B. have to

C. has to

D. should

V. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Wedding Traditions around the World

France: A lovely custom coming to us out of France comes in the form of a two handled cup called the “coup de marriage”. The cup was saved to be used from one generation to another. Of course, the custom has long been established of drinking a toast to one another, but the two handled cup adds a special touch to the weddings of today. Until recently, these cups have been very difficult to find. Drinking from the same cup denotes “togetherness”.

Germany: The tradition coming to us out of Germany includes the bride and groom holding candles trimmed with flowers and ribbons. This beautiful old tradition could be included in a wedding of today, with the couple placing candles they have carried to the altar beside their unity candle. These candles could then be used to light the unity candle at the end of the ceremony.

India: Flowers have always played a very important part in the Indian wedding. A lasting tradition passed along from generations to generations is that of the brother of the groom sprinkling flower petals over the heads of the couple following the wedding vows and at the end of the ceremony.

1. What is the “coup de marriage”?

→_____.

2. What does drinking from the same cup denote?

→_____.

3. When could the candles be used to light the unity candle?

→_____.

4. How have flowers played in the Indian wedding?

→_____.

5. Who sprinkles flower petals over the heads of the couple?

→_____.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C, or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

In Viet Nam, a death anniversary is called gio. It is a festive occasion, at which (1)_____ of an extended family gather together. Female family members traditionally (2)_____ the

entire day cooking an elaborate banquet in honour of the deceased individual, which will then (3)_____enjoyed by all the family members. In addition, sticks of incense are burned in (4)_____and commemoration of the deceased person. It is not unusual for a family to celebrate several gio per year, so the ceremony serves as a time for families to (5)_____, much like the Vietnamese new year, Tet.

In Vietnamese culture, certain special, traditional dishes (particularly desserts) are only prepared (6)_____death anniversary banquet. In addition, favourite foods of the deceased person being honoured are also prepared. Chicken, a particularly prized (7)_____in Viet Nam, is often cooked as well. In Central Viet Nam, small stuffed glutinous rice flour balls (8)_____ in leaves called banh it are such a dish. Because the preparation of (9)_____ many complex dishes is time-consuming, some families purchase or (10)_____caterers to prepare certain dishes. It is also common that a soft-boiled egg be prepared and then given to the oldest grandson.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|-------------|---------------|
| 1. A. members | B. colleagues | C. adults | D. clerks |
| 2. A. take | B. consume | C. purchase | D. spend |
| 3. A. must | B. should | C. be | D. been |
| 4. A. expectation | B. honour | C. wish | D. admiration |
| 5. A. remember | B. discuss | C. reunite | D. relate |
| 6. A. for | B. with | C. on | D. of |
| 7. A. fruit | B. vegetable | C. meat | D. fish |
| 8. A. gathered | B. handled | C. mixed | D. wrapped |
| 9. A. very | B. so | C. such | D. too |
| 10. A. rent | B. offered | C. hire | D. invite |

VII. Match the information in Column A with the customs and traditions in Column B.

A. IN JAPAN

Column A	Column B
1. When you are on the train	a. you should yell to get a waiter's attention.

2. When you meet someone	b. you shouldn't fumble with your chopsticks.
3. When you have meals with the Japanese	c. you shouldn't talk too loudly.
4. When you are in a restaurant	d. you shouldn't open it in front of the giver.
5. When you are given a gift	e. you should bow to greet them.

B. IN BRAZIL

Column A	Column B
1. When men greet one another	a. you should open it immediately
2. When you don't bring a gift to a hostess who invites you to dinner	b. you shouldn't forget to send her flowers the next day
3. When you receive a present	c. should kiss each other's cheek.
4. Women who greet their friends	d. you shouldn't rush them or appear impatient.
5. When negotiating with a Brazilian	e. they should shake hands and maintain eye contact.

VIII. Make sentences using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. The Xa Pho ethnic group/ a population/ over 1,000 people/ mainly/ the district/ Sa Pa.

2. Different folk dances/ the Xa Pho/ performed/ by groups of five to ten people/ straight or curved lines.

3. In the dance movements/ the left hand/ use/ musical instrument/ while/ the right hand/ hold/ costumes following the beat.

4. Girls/ often wear/ traditional skirt and shirt/ indigo fabric.

5. They/ embroider and decorate/ clothes/ elaborately/ beautifully.

6. Main musical instrument/ Ma Nhi.

7. Women/ dance and beat/ rhythm/ the same time.

8. Men and women/ separate dances/ and/ seldom/ dance together.

IX. Use the information below to write a short paragraph of around 100 words about Thanksgiving Day.

What's the tradition?	Thanksgiving Day
What is it?	A harvest celebration
Traditionally, what was it?	A time to give thanks for a big harvest
What is other information?	A holiday to express appreciation to family and friends
What is it celebrated with?	A big family feast
When is the celebration?	4 th Thursday of November
What do families do?	Come together and eat a lot of food
What do they eat?	Big turkeys and cranberries and pumpkin pie
What do they do?	Talk about what they are thankful for (family, friends, good food, good things in lives)

[illegible]

[illegible]

_____A. Yes. There were several guests there, and we all waited until the host invited us to the table.

___1___C. Last week, I had dinner with a French family and they have interesting talbe manners.

_____E. That's unusual! Also, I saw on TV that they use knives and forks.

_____G. You should use your fingers to break the bread.

_____I. Can you eat as soon as you sit down at the dining table?

_____K. During the meal, you should put your hands on the table. My friend tells me that in France it's impossible to rest your hands on your lap.

M. What about bread?

KEY TO TEST (MID-TERM)

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

- | | | | |
|-------------------------|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------------------|
| 1. A. spring | B. stripe | C. strict | D. newsprint |
| 2. A. stran <u>g</u> er | B. spr <u>a</u> g | C. <u>a</u> stronaut | D. misprogr <u>a</u> mm <u>e</u> |
| 3. A. esp <u>r</u> esso | B. ped <u>e</u> strain | C. str <u>e</u> ngth | D. r <u>e</u> spray |
| 4. A. str <u>o</u> ll | B. <u>o</u> verspread | C. dispr <u>o</u> ve | D. str <u>o</u> ke |
| 5. A. spr <u>u</u> ng | B. fr <u>u</u> strate | C. str <u>u</u> cture | D. spr <u>u</u> ce |
1. B 2. A 3. D. 4. C 5. D

II. Rewrite these imperatives so that they have opposite meaning to the originals.

Break	chopsticks	custom	generations	manners
Residents	respect	shoes	tradition	worshipping

1. In Viet Nam, we follow the tradition of _____ the ancestors.
 2. You should take off your _____ before going into a Japanese house.
 3. In my family there is a _____ of having dinner together at 7.30 sharp.
 4. We shouldn't _____ with this tradition because it reflects our culture and lifestyle.
 5. You should place the _____ on top of the rice bowl when you finish a meal in Viet Nam.
 6. There is a British _____ of having afternoon tea at 4 p.m.
 7. We cook five-coloured sticky rice on the first of every lunar month, and our family has followed this tradition for _____.
 8. According to our tradition, you should _____ old people.
 9. In our community, it's the custom for the _____ to clean the streets on Sunday mornings.
 10. You should learn about British table _____ so you can feel comfortable at dinner.
1. worshipping
2. shoes
3. custom

4. break
5. chopsticks
6. tradition
7. generations
8. respect
9. residents
10. manners

III. Complete the sentences with have to, has to, don't have to, or doesn't have to.

1. It's Sunday, so the children _____ go to school.
2. Minh _____ study for a test, so he is going to stay at home.
3. Your shoes are dirty. You _____ clean them.
4. I _____ take an umbrella. It isn't raining.
5. Peter _____ get up early. It's his holiday.
6. It's very informal here. You _____ wear a tie unless you want to.
7. Jane _____ tidy her room. It is a mess.
8. The train is direct. Your brother _____ change trains.
9. In Britain, everyone _____ pay in pounds.
10. Help yourself to anything you want. You _____ ask.

1. don't have to
2. has to
3. have to
4. don't have to
5. doesn't have to
6. don't have to
7. has to
8. doesn't have to
9. has to

10. don't have to

IV. Choose the correct answer A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. My family_____ the tradition of cooking sticky rice on the first day of a lunar month.
A. discovers B. allows **C. follows** D. advises
2. When having meals with a British family, you should never chew with your_____open.
A. hand B. eye C. finger **D. mouth**
3. We enjoy our family customs and traditions because they provide us with a sense of _____.
A. belonging B. missing C. worrying D. surrounding
4. The xoe dance is a_____tradition of Thai ethnic people.
A. physical **B. spiritual** C. material D. practical
5. In Japan when bowing, you_____your appreciation and respect to other person.
A. prepare B. suggest C. open **D. express**
6. You_____use your mobile phone on the plane.
A. must **B. mustn't** C. don't have to D. have to
7. He_____cross the street when the traffic light is green for pedestrians.
A. should B. shouldn't **C. ought** D. oughtn't
8. It's optional. We_____go if you don't want.
A. have to B. don't have to C. mustn't **D. must**
9. She's always tired. She_____go to bed late every night.
A. can **B. can't** C. should D. shouldn't
10. My brother_____work late tonight. His boss ordered him to stay until 10.00.
A. must B. have to **C. has to** D. should

V. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Wedding Traditions around the World

France: A lovely custom coming to us out of France comes in the form of a two handled cup called the "coup de marriage". The cup was saved to be used from one generation to another. Of

course, the custom has long been established of drinking a toast to one another, but the two handled cup adds a special touch to the weddings of today. Until recently, these cups have been very difficult to find. Drinking from the same cup denotes “togetherness”.

Germany: The tradition coming to us out of Germany includes the bride and groom holding candles trimmed with flowers and ribbons. This beautiful old tradition could be included in a wedding of today, with the couple placing candles they have carried to the altar beside their unity candle. These candles could then be used to light the unity candle at the end of the ceremony.

India: Flowers have always played a very important part in the Indian wedding. A lasting tradition passed along from generations to generations is that of the brother of the groom sprinkling flower petals over the heads of the couple following the wedding vows and at the end of the ceremony.

1. What is the “coup de marriage”?
→ It is a two handled cup.
2. What does drinking from the same cup denote?
→ It denotes “togetherness” .
3. When could the candles be used to light the unity candle?
→ At the end of the ceremony.
4. How have flowers played in the Indian wedding?
→ They have always played a very important part (in the Indian wedding).
5. Who sprinkles flower petals over the heads of the couple?
→ The brother of the groom does.

VI. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C, or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

In Viet Nam, a death anniversary is called gio. It is a festive occasion, at which (1)_____ of an extended family gather together. Female family members traditionally (2)_____ the entire day cooking an elaborate banquet in honour of the deceased individual, which will then (3)_____ enjoyed by all the family members. In addition, sticks of incense are burned in (4)_____ and commemoration of the deceased person. It is not unusual for a family to celebrate several gio per year, so the ceremony serves as a time for families to (5)_____, much like the Vietnamese new year, Tet.

In Vietnamese culture, certain special, traditional dishes (particularly desserts) are only prepared (6)_____ death anniversary banquet. In addition, favourite foods of the deceased

person being honoured are also prepared. Chicken, a particularly prized (7)_____ in Viet Nam, is often cooked as well. In Central Viet Nam, small stuffed glutinous rice flour balls (8)_____ in leaves called banh it are such a dish. Because the preparation of (9)_____ many complex dishes is time-consuming, some families purchase or (10)_____ caterers to prepare certain dishes. It is also common that a soft-boiled egg be prepared and then given to the oldest grandson.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| 1. A. members | B. colleagues | C. adults | D. clerks |
| 2. A. take | B. consume | C. purchase | D. spend |
| 3. A. must | B. should | C. be | D. been |
| 4. A. expectation | B. honour | C. wish | D. admiration |
| 5. A. remember | B. discuss | C. reunite | D. relate |
| 6. A. for | B. with | C. on | D. of |
| 7. A. fruit | B. vegetable | C. meat | D. fish |
| 8. A. gathered | B. handled | C. mixed | D. wrapped |
| 9. A. very | B. so | C. such | D. too |
| 10. A. rent | B. offered | C. hire | D. invite |

VII. Match the information in Coloumn A with the customs and traditions in Column B.

A. IN JAPAN

Column A	Column B
1. When you are on the train	a. you should yell to get a waiter's attention.
2. When you meet someone	b. you shouldn't fumble with your chopsticks.
3. When you have meals with the Japanese	c. you shouldn't talk too loudly.
4. When you are in a restaurant	d. you shouldn't open it in front of the giver.
5. When you are given a gift	e. you should bow to greet them.

1. c, 2. E, 3. B, 4. A, 5. d

B. IN BRAZIL

Column A	Column B
1. When men greet one another	a. you should open it immediately
2. When you don't bring a gift to a hostess who invites you to dinner	b. you shouldn't forget to send her flowers the next day
3. When you receive a present	c. should kiss each other's cheek.
4. Women who greet their friends	d. you shouldn't rush them or appear impatient.
5. When negotiating with a Brazilian	e. they should shake hands and maintain eye contact.

1. e, 2. B, 3. A, 4. C, 5.d

VIII. Make sentences using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. The Xa Pho ethnic group/ a population/ over 1,000 people/ mainly/ the district/ Sa Pa.

The Xa Pho ethnic group has a population of over 1,000 people mainly living in the district of Sa Pa.

2. Different folk dances/ the Xa Pho/ performed/ by groups of five to ten people/ straight or curved lines.

Many different folk dances of the Xa Pho are performed by groups of five to ten people in straight or curved lines.

3. In the dance movements/ the left hand/ use/ musical instrument/ while/ the right hand/ hold/ costumes following the beat.

In the dance movements, the left hand is using the musical instrument while the right hand is holding costumes following the beat.

4. Girls/ often wear/ traditional skirt and shirt/ indigo fabric.

Girls often wear a traditional skirt and shirt made of indigo fabric.

5. They/ embroider and decorate/ clothes/ elaborately/ beautifully.

They embroider and decorate their clothes elaborately and beautifully.

6. Main musical instrument/ Ma Nhi.

The main musical instrument is Ma Nhi

7. Women/ dance and beat/ rhythm/ the same time.

Women dance and beat the rhythm at the same time.

8. Men and women/ separate dances/ and/ seldom/ dance together.

Men and women have separate dances and seldom dance together.

IX. Use the information below to write a short paragraph of around 100 words about Thanksgiving Day.

What's the tradition?	Thanksgiving Day
What is it?	A harvest celebration
Traditionally, what was it?	A time to give thanks for a big harvest
What is other information?	A holiday to express appreciation to family and friends
What is it celebrated with?	A big family feast
When is the celebration?	4 th Thursday of November
What do families do?	Come together and eat a lot of food
What do they eat?	Big turkeys and cranberries and pumpkin pie
What do they do?	Talk about what they are thankful for (family, friends, good food, good things in lives)

Thanksgiving Day is a harvest celebration. Traditionally, it was a time to give thanks for a big harvest. It is also a holiday to express appreciation to family and friends. This is why it is celebrated with a big family feast. Nowadays Thanksgiving is celebrated on the fourth Thursday of November. Thanksgiving is a time when families come together and eat a lot of food. They eat big turkeys and cranberries and pumpkin pie. It is a day of gratitude and appreciation. Everybody

B. SPEAKING: Rearrange the sentences to make a complete conversation. Then practice it with a friend. The first one has been done for you.

- _____A. Yes. There were several guests there, and we all waited until the host invited us to the table.
- _____B. No, You should wait until the host says “Bon appetit”.
- ___1___C. Last week, I had dinner with a French family and they have interesting table manners.
- _____D. What about during the meal?
- _____E. That’s unusual! Also, I saw on TV that they use knives and forks.
- _____F. What does it mean?
- _____G. You should use your fingers to break the bread.
- _____H. Really?
- _____I. Can you eat as soon as you sit down at the dining table?
- _____J. It means “Enjoy your meals!”
- _____K. During the meal, you should put your hands on the table. My friend tells me that in France it’s impossible to rest your hands on your lap.
- _____L. Right. The fork is held in the left hand and the knife in the right hand. They also have forks and spoons for dessert.
- _____M. What about bread?
1. C 2. H 3. A 4. I 5. B
6. F
7. J 8. D 9. K 10. E 11. L
12. M
13. G

UNIT 5: FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM(E8)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Anniversary (n)</i>	/ˌæniˈvɜːsəri/	Ngày kỷ niệm	<i>Invader (n)</i>	/ɪnˈveɪdə(r)/	Kẻ xâm lược
<i>Archway (n)</i>	/ˈɑːtʃweɪ/	Mái vòm	<i>Joyful (adj)</i>	/ˈdʒɔɪfl/	Vui vẻ
<i>Carnival (n)</i>	/ˈkɑːnɪvl/	Lễ hội (hóa trang)	<i>Lantern (n)</i>	/ˈlæntən/	Đèn trời / đèn thả sông
<i>Ceremony (n)</i>	/ˈserəməni/	Nghi lễ	<i>Offering (n)</i>	/ˈɒfərɪŋ/	Lễ vật

			<i>Offer (v)</i>	<i>/ˈɒfə(r)/</i>	
<i>Clasp (v)</i>	<i>/klaːsp/</i>	Bắt tay	<i>Procession (n)</i>	<i>/prəˈseɪʃn/</i>	Đám rước
<i>Commemorate (v)</i>	<i>/kəˈmeməreɪt/</i>	Kỷ niệm	<i>Preserve (v)</i> <i>Preservation (n)</i> <i>Preservative (adj)</i>	<i>/priˈzɜːv/</i> <i>/ˌprezəˈveɪʃn/</i> <i>/priˈzɜːvətɪv/</i>	Bảo tồn
<i>Command (n)</i>	<i>/kəˈmɑːnd/</i>	Hiệu lệnh	<i>Ritual (n)</i>	<i>/ˈrɪtʃuəl/</i>	Nghi thức (trong lễ hội, tôn giáo)
<i>Companion (n)</i>	<i>/kəmˈpæniən/</i>	Bạn đồng hành	<i>Royal court music</i>	<i>/ˈrɔɪəl kɔːt ˈmjuːzɪk/</i>	Nhã nhạc cung đình
<i>Defeat (v)</i>	<i>/dɪˈfiːt/</i>	Đánh bại	<i>Regret (v)</i>	<i>/rɪˈɡret/</i>	Hối hận
<i>Emperor (n)</i>	<i>/ˈempərə(r)/</i>	Hoàng đế	<i>Scenery (n)</i>	<i>/ˈsiːnəri/</i>	Cảnh quan
<i>Float (v)</i>	<i>/fləʊt/</i>	Thả trôi nổi	<i>Worship (v)</i>	<i>/ˈwɜːʃɪp/</i>	Tôn thờ, thờ cúng ai
<i>Gong (n)</i>	<i>/ɡɒŋ/</i>	Cồng (nhạc cụ dân tộc)	<i>Incense (n)</i>	<i>/ˈɪnsens/</i>	Hương, nhang
<i>Rice flake (n)</i>	<i>/raɪs fleɪk/</i>	Cốm			

II. Grammar: Simple sentences / Compound sentences / Complex sentences

+ Compound sentences using conjunctions *and*, *but*, *or*, *yet*, *so* and conjunctive adverbs *however*, *nevertheless*, *moreover*, *therefore*, *otherwise*

+ Complex sentences using subordinators *because*, *if*, *when*, *while*, *although*, *even though*

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- A. concentration B. composition C. consideration D. conversation
- A. coordination B. depression C. donation D. erection
- A. foundation B. location C. organization D. performance
- A. attention B. recognition C. contribution D. animation
- A. consumption B. explosion C. technician D. mathematician
- A. magician B. historian C. musician D. vegetarian
- A. librarian B. physician C. Brazilian D. Indonesian
- A. civilian B. grammarian C. politician D. Shakespearian

II. Complete the table with appropriate verbs and nouns

VERBS	NOUNS
-------	-------

1.	Celebration
2.	commemoration
Gather	3.
Perform	4.
Reunite	5.

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences

1. In 2010, Hanoiits 1,000th anniversary.

- A. celebrated B. commemorated C. worshipped D.
remembered

2. Theof *quan ho* singing has been recognized as a world heritage.

- A. preservation B. procession C. performance D. song

3. Tet is an occasion for family in Vietnam.

- A. visitings B. meetings C. reunions D. seeings

4. When the arrives at the Cham Tower, the dancers perform a welcome dance in front of the tower.

- A. procession B. crowd C. parade D. dancer

5. People burn incense to show respect to their During Tet.

- A. relatives B. ancestors C. friends D.
neighbours

6. The Le Mat Festival the founding of the village.

- A. worships B. commemorates C. performs D. preserves

IV. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. To make *Chung* cake, the rice and green bean has to be _____in water for a day to make it stickier. (soak)

2. Vietnamese families plan their _____around their children on Tet holiday. (activity)

3. Parents would use the Mid-Autumn Festival as an opportunity to show their love and _____for their children. (appreciate)

4. Lanterns represent _____while the procession symbolizes success in school. (bright)

5. I am writing to express my _____ of my stay at the Eden Hotel in London last weekend . (satisfy)

V. Connect each pair of sentences with an appropriate conjunctive adverb in the box to make compound sentences

<i>however nevertheless moreover therefore</i>	<i>otherwise</i>
--	------------------

1. There are more than 300 steps up the hill to Hung King Temple. Any pilgrim would like to reach the top.

.....

2. At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy mooncakes. Every child likes it very much.

.....

3. We like Tet because it is a long holiday. We can also receive lucky money.

.....

4. Most people book tickets long in advance. They cannot return home for Tet.

.....

5. Tet is considered a holiday. We can also receive lucky money.

.....

VI. Complete the following sentences with the conjunctions *but, for, or, so*.

1. John and Nick want to see the dragon boat races, _____ they are going to Ouk bok festival.

2. Mary can go to the Le Mat Snake Festival, _____ she can stay at home.

3. The Robinsons have been to the Yen Tu Festival, _____ they have never been to the Huong Pagoda Festival.

4. Quang liked the Cow Racing Festival, _____ he went there with his parents.

5. You should go to the Hung King Temple Festival, _____ there are a lot of joyful activities there.

VII. Make sentences about the Giong Festival, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. The Giong Festival / held / the 6th / the 12th / the 4th Lunar month / several venues around Hanoi.

.....

...

2. The festival / commemorate / Saint Giong / who / defeat / the

An.....
.....

3. It / also / an opportunity / hope for abundant harvests / happy lives / and express patriotism.

.....
...

4. During / festival / villagers / the statue bathing / processions of bamboo flowers / Soc
Temple.

.....
...

5. The festival / provide / many entertaining activities / including / folk games / traditional
singing performances.

6. The festival / recognized / UNESCO / as an intangible cultural heritage / mankind.

.....
...

VIII. Fill in each blank with a suitable word to complete the following passage

DISADVANTAGES OF FESTIVALS

expensive	dangerous	waste	Accidents
Cause	Performance	crowds	preserve

Although people love festivals very much, there are also some disadvantages.

First, festivals are very costly. Because the general purpose of festivals is to (1)_____ cultural heritages, a nation is willing to spend a lot of money on this. Moreover, during a festival, most people do not work but spend money on (2)_____ gifts for their friends and relatives.

Second, festivals can be dangerous. People may drink a lot during a festival and cause road (3)_____. In many festivals, there are races like cow-racing and elephant racing which may be (4)_____, especially for children. Moreover, in some festivals, when people rush to see the events, they may also (5)_____ other people to get hurt.

Third, festivals may affect the environment. After a festival, the roads are full of colorful paper, flowers (6)_____ cans or bottles that people throw away. Trees along the roadsides may be damaged by the (7) _ Furthermore, the noise from music and other (8) _____ also cause noise pollution.

IX. Read the extracts from these travel brochures and do the tasks that follow:

Welcome to the Natchitoches Christmas Festival, Louisiana!

Don't miss the start of the festival – It's on the first Saturday of December. Come and enjoy the early afternoon parade, an arts show, and displays of the Louisiana cuisine. There is also a

spectacular evening firework show with music and a laser show in addition to live entertainment. Most spectacularly, after the firework display is the lighting-up ceremony along the Cane River – a display of 300,000 lights. Enjoy the bright lights of the Cane River banks until after New Year's Day.

Nha Trang Carnival – Exciting Times in June!

Join the opening ceremony – an impressive show giving the history of Nha Trang, a city with a good climate provided by nature. Then comes the firework display, which lights up the whole city, followed by the street carnival the next morning. You will also like various traditional, musical performances by the Viet, the Cham, and other ethnic peoples, in addition to performances of songs about the sea. The following day brings the excitement of sea swimming, yachting, boating, and wind-surfing events. When the night falls, the public dances begin – you are welcome to join in! Don't miss this colorful mix of cultures!

a) Read the brochures then find the words which mean:

1. A public procession to celebrate an event _____
2. A style of cooking _____
3. very impressive _____
4. living, not recorded previously _____
5. weather _____
6. of particular cultural groups _____
7. sailing _____
8. a combination of different types _____

b) Read the brochures again and decide if the sentences are True (T) or false (F)

1. The Natchitoches Christmas Festival starts from the first Saturday of December
2. There is a spectacular firework display only at the Natchitoches Christmas Festival.
3. Both festivals go on for a long time.
4. Both festivals have evening celebrations
5. In both of the festivals there are displays of local cuisine.

c) Answer the questions

1. Where is the Natchitoches Christmas Festival held?

.....
...

2. Why shouldn't visitors miss the beginning of the Natchitoches Christmas Festival?

.....
...

3. The city is called the City of Lights during the Natchitoches Christmas Festival. Why is that?

.....
...

4. What performances can visitors see on the second day at the Nha Trang Festival?

.....
...

5. How many visitors feel about the events on the third day?

.....
...

6. How do you think the Nha Trang Festival is different from other festivals in Vietnam?

.....
...

X. There are five prepositions mistakes in the passage below. Can you find and correct them?

Tet's preparations and celebrations used to be spread over months, but nowadays the holiday is much shorter. A great deal of excitement still builds in well before Tet. Streets are decorated on colored lights and red banner. Shops are full with goods. People are busy buying gifts, cleaning and decorating their houses and cooking traditional foods.

Homes are often decorated with plants and flowers at this time. Peach blossom is traditional at Tet in the North while apricot blossom is traditional in the South. The kumquat tree in its ripe deep orange fruits is popular throughout the country. One of Tet's most special food is *banh chung*, which is made up sticky rice, green beans and fatty pork. Mut, which is candied fruits such as sugared apples, plums or tomatoes, is also popular.

1. _____
2. _____
3. _____

4. _____
5. _____

XI. Use the information below to write a paragraph of about 150 words about the Lim Festival.

Name of festival	Lim Festival
Time	13 th day of the 1 st Lunar month
How often?	Annually
Location	Tien Du District, Bac Ninh province
What is it?	Quan ho singing, UNESCO's Intangible Cultural Heritage since 2009

Activities	Quan ho singing performance Female singers (<i>lien chi</i>) wear <i>ao tu thanh</i> (<i>four-panel traditional dress</i>) and <i>quai thao</i> hat Male singers (<i>lien anh</i>) wear <i>ao the</i> and <i>khan xep</i> Sing love duets together in pair one male and one female On the lake in front of Lim Communal House: Scenery of <i>quan ho</i> singing performance on a dragon boat
Games	Bamboo swing playing, wrestling, cocks fighting, tugging war, blind man's buff, human chess, pot beating

KEY TO FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM(UNIT 5)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Anniversary (n)</i>	/ˈænɪˈvɜːsəri/	Ngày kỷ niệm	<i>Invader (n)</i>	/ˈɪnveɪdɜ(r)/	Kẻ xâm lược
<i>Archway (n)</i>	/ˈɑːtʃweɪ/	Mái vòm	<i>Joyful (adj)</i>	/dʒɔɪfl/	Vui vẻ
<i>Carnival (n)</i>	/ˈkɑːnəl/	Lễ hội (hóa trang)	<i>Lantern (n)</i>	/ˈlæntɜn/	Đèn trời / đèn thả sông
<i>Ceremony (n)</i>	/ˈserɪməni/	Nghi lễ	<i>Offering (n)</i> <i>Offer (v)</i>	/ˈɒfərɪŋ/ /ˈɒfə(r)/	Lễ vật
<i>Clasp (v)</i>	/klæsp/	Bắt tay	<i>Procession (n)</i>	/ˈprɒseɪn/	Đám rước
<i>Commemorate (v)</i>	/kəˈmeməreɪt/	Kỷ niệm	<i>Preserve (v)</i> <i>Preservation (n)</i> <i>Preservative (adj)</i>	/prɪˈzəʊv/ /ˈprezəveɪn/ /prɪˈzɜːvətɪv/	Bảo tồn
<i>Command (n)</i>	/kəˈmænd/	Hiệu lệnh	<i>Ritual (n)</i>	/ˈrɪtʃuəl/	Nghi thức (trong lễ hội, tôn giáo)
<i>Companion (n)</i>	/kəmˈpæniən/	Bạn đồng hành	<i>Royal court music</i>	/ˈrɔɪəl kɜːt mjuːzɪk/	Nhã nhạc cung đình

				amjuəzÁk /	
Defeat (v)	/dÁfiət /	Đánh bại	Regret (v)	/rÁDžet /	Hối hận
Emperor (n)	/əempkr̥k(r) /	Đế chế	Scenery (n)	/əsiən̥kri /	Cảnh quan
Float(v)	/fl̥t /	Thả trôi nổi			
Gong (n)	/Džŋ /	Cồng (nhạc cụ dân tộc)			
Rice flake (n)	/raÁs fleÁk /	Cốm			
Incense (n)	/əÁnsens /	Hương, nhang	Worship (v)	/wŋəp /	Tôn thờ, thờ cúng ai

II. Grammar: Simple sentences / Compound sentences / Complex sentences

Liên từ là gì?

Liên từ trong tiếng anh là từ dùng để nối hai phần, hai mệnh đề trong một câu. Ví dụ:

- Liên từ đẳng lập: and, but, or, nor, for, yet, so.
- Liên từ phụ thuộc: although, because, since, **unless**.

Cấu tạo của liên từ trong tiếng anh

Liên từ gồm 3 dạng chính:

- Từ đơn ví dụ: and, but, because, although
- Từ ghép (thường kết thúc bằng as hoặc that) ví dụ: provided that, as long as, in order that
- Tương liên (đi cùng với trạng từ hoặc tính từ) ví dụ: so...that

Vị trí và cách dùng của liên từ trong tiếng anh

Cách sử dụng và vị trí của liên từ đẳng lập (coordinating conjunctions)

Vị trí: Liên từ đẳng lập: luôn luôn đứng giữa 2 từ hoặc 2 mệnh đề mà nó liên kết. Khi một liên từ đẳng lập nối các mệnh đề độc lập thì luôn có dấu phẩy đứng trước liên từ

VD: I want to work as an interpreter in the future, so I am studying Russian at university.

- Tuy nhiên, nếu các mệnh đề độc lập ngắn và tương tự nhau thì dấu phẩy không thực sự cần thiết:

VD: She is kind so she helps people.

- Khi “and” đứng trước từ cuối cùng trong một dãy liệt kê, thì có thể có dấu phẩy hoặc không

Cách dùng:

- Dùng loại liên từ này để nối những các từ loại hoặc cụm từ/ nhóm từ cùng một loại, hoặc những mệnh đề ngang hàng nhau (tính từ với tính từ, danh từ với danh từ ...)

Gồm có: for, and, nor, but, or, yet

VD: She is a good and loyal wife. Use your credit cards frequently and you'll soon find yourself deep in debt. He is intelligent but very lazy. She says she does not love me, yet I still love her.

We have to work hard, or we will fail the exam. He will surely succeed, for (because) he works hard. That is not what I meant to say, nor should you interpret my statement as an admission of guilt.

- **Chú ý:** khi dùng liên từ kết hợp để nối hai mệnh đề, chúng ta thêm dấu phẩy sau mệnh đề thứ nhất trước liên từ

VD: Ulysses wants to play for UConn, but he has had trouble meeting the academic requirements.

Vị trí và cách dùng của tương liên từ (correlative conjunctions)

Một vài liên từ thường kết hợp với các từ khác để tạo thành các tương liên từ. Chúng thường được sử dụng theo cặp để liên kết các cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề có chức năng tương đương nhau về mặt ngữ pháp

Gồm có: both . . . and...(vừa....vừa...), not only . . . but also... (không chỉ...mà còn...), not . . . but, either . . . or (hoặc ..hoặc..), neither . . . nor (không....cũng không...), whether . . . or , as . . . as, no sooner.... than...(vừa mới....thì...)

Ví dụ: They learn both English and French. He drinks neither wine nor beer. I like playing not only tennis but also football. I don't have either books or notebooks. I can't make up my mind whether to buy some new summer clothes now or wait until the prices go down.

Cách dùng và vị trí của liên từ phụ thuộc (subordinating conjunctions)

Vị trí: **Liên từ phụ thuộc:** thường đứng đầu mệnh đề phụ thuộc. Liên từ phụ thuộc nối mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính

Cách dùng: Loại liên từ phụ thuộc nối kết các nhóm từ, cụm từ hoặc mệnh đề có chức năng khác nhau - mệnh đề phụ với mệnh đề chính trong câu.

Ví dụ: I hurried so as to be on time.

- **Chú ý:** Ngoài liên từ, chúng ta có thể sử dụng các trạng từ liên kết như therefore, otherwise, nevertheless, thus, hence, furthermore, consequently...
Ví dụ: We wanted to arrive on time; however, we were delayed by traffic. I was nervous; therefore, I could not do my best. We should consult them; otherwise, they may be upset.

Các loại liên từ trong tiếng anh

1. Liên từ chỉ kết quả (result)

- **SO + adj/adv + THAT + clause**
- **SUCH + noun + THAT + clause** (trong văn nói có thể lược bỏ THAT)
VD: He was SO tired THAT he went to bed early. It was SUCH a difficult exam (THAT) he knew he wouldn't pass it.
- **SO + clause**
VD: It was late, SO he decided to take a taxi home.
- **AS A RESULT, CONSEQUENTLY** có thể dùng để mở đầu câu.
- **AND, AS A RESULT** được dùng để nối 2 mệnh đề trong một câu.
VD: We have invested too much money in this project. CONSEQUENTLY, we are in financial difficulties. His wife left him, AND/AS A RESULT, he became very depressed.
- **THEREFORE** thường được dùng ở giữa câu (ngoài ra cũng có thể dùng ở đầu hoặc cuối câu)
VD: We feel, THEREFORE, that a decision must be made.

2. Liên từ chỉ lý do (reason)

- **SINCE/AS/SEEING THAT + clause (đứng trước mệnh đề chính)**
VD: SEEING THAT/SINCE/AS we arrived late, all the best seats had been taken.

- **BECAUSE + clause (đứng sau mệnh đề chính)**

VD: We couldn't find a good seat BECAUSE all the best ones had been taken.

- **BECAUSE OF/AS A RESULT OF/OWING TO/DUE TO + noun/noun phrase.**

VD: We were unable to go by train BECAUSE OF the rail strike. Many of the deaths of older people are DUE TO heart attacks.

3. Liên từ chỉ mục đích (purpose)

- **(NOT) TO/IN ORDER (NOT) TO/SO AS (NOT) TO + verb nguyên mẫu**

Chú ý: trong văn viết (formal) không nên dùng (NOT) TO

VD: We came to the countryside TO find some peace and quiet. Handle the flowers carefully IN ORDER NOT TO damage them.

- **SO THAT/IN ORDER THAT + clause (thường dùng can, could, might, would)**

VD: He chose this university SO THAT/IN ORDER THAT he could study Physics.

4. Liên từ chỉ sự đối lập (contrast)

- **ALTHOUGH/EVEN IF/EVEN THOUGH + clause (even though chỉ dùng trong văn nói)**

VD: ALTHOUGH/EVEN IF/EVEN THOUGH the car is old, it is still reliable.

- **DESPITE/IN SPITE OF + noun/noun phrase/V_ing**

- **DESPITE THE FACT THAT/IN SPITE OF THE FACT THAT + clause**

VD: DESPITE/IN SPITE OF the rain, I went for a walk. We enjoyed our walking holiday DESPITE THE FACT THAT/IN SPITE OF THE FACT THAT it was tiring.

- **HOWEVER + clause**

- **THOUGH thường dùng trong văn nói, và đứng ở cuối câu.**

VD: Buying a house is expensive. It is, HOWEVER, a good investment. It's a big decision to make, THOUGH.

- **BUT/WHILE/WHEREAS thường dùng để nối 2 mệnh đề trong câu.**

VD: John is very rich BUT/WHILE/WHEREAS his friends are extremely poor.

- **ON THE ONE HAND/ON THE OTHER HAND dùng cho một cặp câu diễn tả 2 ý trái ngược nhau.**

VD: ON THE ONE HAND these computers are expensive. ON THE OTHER HAND they are exactly what we want.

5. Liên từ chỉ thời gian

- **WHEN/WHILE/AS/AFTER + clause**

VD: WHEN/WHILE/AS I was driving along the road, I saw a terrible accident. He went out AFTER he'd finished work.

- **WHENEVER/EVERY TIME + clause**

VD: WHENEVER/EVERY TIME I see him, he's driving a different car.

- **FIRST/THEN/LATER etc. dùng để giới thiệu những mốc thời gian.**

VD: FIRST he closed all the windows, THEN he locked the doors. LATER he came back to check that everything was all right.

- **DURING/ALL THROUGH/THROUGHOUT + noun phrase.**

VD: DURING/ALL THROUGH the summer we get a lot of visitors. It rained heavily THROUGHOUT the night.

6. Liên từ chỉ điều kiện (condition)

- **EVEN IF/AS LONG AS/UNLESS + clause**

VD: EVEN IF you are born rich, life is still difficult. You can borrow the car AS LONG AS you're careful with it. You can't come with me UNLESS you promise to keep quiet.

- **WHETHER... OR NOT được dùng làm câu hỏi gián tiếp.**

Sau giới từ và/hoặc trước động từ TO V chúng ta sử dụng WHETHER chứ không dùng IF. Ex: I don't know WHETHER you have met him OR NOT. It depends ON WHETHER the government takes any action. The organizers will decide WHETHER TO IMPOSE fines.

- **IN CASE + clause**
- **IN CASE OF + noun (dùng trong văn viết)**

VD: Take this umbrella IN CASE it rains. IN CASE OF emergency, break the glass

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|----------------------|--------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. A. procession | B. companion | C. production | D. celebration |
| 2. A. magician | B. vegetarian | C. historian | D. civilian |
| 3. A. confusion | B. musician | C. ancestor | D. importance |
| 4. A. tradition | B. festival | C. emperor | D. motherland |
| 5. A. clinician | B. pagoda | C. visitor | D. arrival |

II. Complete the table with appropriate verbs and nouns

Verbs	Nouns	Verbs	Nouns
1. concentrate	concentration	16. organize	Organization
2. compose	composition	17. compare	comparison
3. consider	Consideration	18. attend	attention
4. construct	Construction	19. recognize	Recognition
5. coordinate	Coordination	20. animate	Animation
6. depress	Depression	21. consume	Consumption
7. donate	Donation	22. explode	Explosion
8. erect	erection	23. discuss	discussion
9. found	Foundation	24. celebrate	Celebration
10. locate	Location	25. educate	Education

11. apply	Application	26. commemorate	commemoration
12. generate	Generation	27. invade	invasion
13. oblige	Obligation	28. preserve	Preservation
14. reflect	reflection	29. recommend	recommendation
15. converse	conservation	30. present	presentation

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences

1. In 2010, Hanoiits 1,000th anniversary.

- A. celebrated** B. commemorated C. worshipped D. remembered

2. Theof *quan ho* singing has been recognized as a world heritage.

- A. preservation B. procession **C. performance** D. song

3. Tet is an occasion for family in Vietnam.

- A. visitings B. meetings **C. reunions** D. seeings

4. When the arrives at the Cham Tower, the dancers perform a welcome dance in front of the tower.

- A. procession** B. crowd C. parade D. dancer

5. People burn incense to show respect to their During Tet.

- A. relatives **B. ancestors** C. friends D. neighbours

6. The Le Mat Festival the founding of the village.

- A. worships **B. commemorates** C. performs D. preserves

IV. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. To make *Chung* cake, the rice and green bean has to be **soaked** in water for a day to make it stickier. (soak)

2. Vietnamese families plan their **activities** around their children on Tet holiday.

3. Parents would use the Mid-Autumn Festival as an opportunity to show their love and **appreciation** for their children.

4. Lanterns represent **brightness** while the procession symbolizes success in school.
5. I am writing to express my **dissatisfaction** of my stay at the Eden Hotel in London last weekend.

V. Connect each pair of sentences with an appropriate conjunctive adverb in the box to make compound sentences

<i>however</i> <i>nevertheless</i> <i>moreover</i> <i>therefore</i> <i>otherwise</i>
--

1. There are more than 300 steps up the hill to Hung King Temple. Any pilgrim would like to reach the top.

There are more than 300 steps up the hill to Hung King Temple; however/ nevertheless, any pilgrim would like to reach the top

2. At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy mooncakes. Every child likes it very much.

At the Mid-Autumn Festival, kids can sing, dance, and enjoy mooncakes; therefore, every child likes it very much.

3. We like Tet because it is a long holiday. We can also receive lucky money.

We like Tet because it is a long holiday; moreover, we can also receive lucky money.

4. Most people book tickets long in advance. They cannot return home for Tet.

Most people book tickets long in advance; otherwise, they cannot return home for Tet.

5. Tet is considered a holiday. We can also receive lucky money.

Tet is considered a holiday; however/ nevertheless, people become even busier than on ordinary days.

VI. Complete the following sentences with the conjunctions *but*, *for*, *or*, *so*.

1. John and Nick want to see the dragon boat races, **so** they are going to Ouk om bok festival.
2. Mary can go to the Le Mat Snake Festival, **or** she can stay at home.
3. The Robinsons have been to the Yen Tu Festival, **but** they have never been to the Huong Pagoda Festival.
4. Quang liked the Cow Racing Festival, **so** he went there with his parents.
5. You should go to the Hung King Temple Festival, **for** there are a lot of joyful activities there.

VII. Make sentences about the Giong Festival, using the words and phrases given. You can add some words and make changes.

1. The Giong Festival / held / the 6th / the 12th / the 4th Lunar month / several venues around Hanoi.

The Giong Festival is held from the 6th to the 12th of the 4th Lunar month in several venues around Hanoi

2. The festival / commemorate / Saint Giong / who / defeat / the An.

The festival commemorates Saint Giong who defeated the An

3. It / also / an opportunity / hope for abundant harvests / happy lives / and express patriotism.

It is also an opportunity to hope for abundant harvests and happy lives, and express patriotism

4. During / festival / villagers / the statue bathing / processions of bamboo flowers / Soc Temple.

During the festival, villagers do the statue bathing, processions of bamboo flowers to Soc Temple

5. The festival / provide / many entertaining activities / including / folk games / traditional singing performances.

The festival also provides many entertaining activities, including folk games and traditional singing performances.

6. The festival / recognized / UNESCO / as an intangible cultural heritage / mankind.

The festival has been recognized by UNESCO as an intangible cultural heritage of mankind.

VIII. Fill in each blank with a suitable word to complete the following passage

DISADVANTAGES OF FESTIVALS

expensive	dangerous	waste	Accidents
Cause	Performance	crowds	preserve

Although people love festivals very much, there are also some disadvantages.

First, festivals are very costly. Because the general purpose of festivals is to (1) **preserve** cultural heritages, a nation is willing to spend a lot of money on this. Moreover, during a festival, most people do not work but spend money on (2) **expensive** gifts for their friends and relatives.

Second, festivals can be dangerous. People may drink a lot during a festival and cause road (3) **accidents**. In many festivals, there are races like cow-racing and elephant racing which may be (4) **dangerous**, especially for children. Moreover, in some festivals, when people rush to see the events, they may also (5) **cause** other people to get hurt.

Third, festivals may affect the environment. After a festival, the roads are full of colorful paper, flowers (6) **waste** cans or bottles that people throw away. Trees along the roadsides may be damaged by the (7) **crowds**. Furthermore, the noise from music and other (8) **performances** also cause noise pollution.

IX. Read the extracts from these travel brochures and do the tasks that follow:

Welcome to the Natchitoches Christmas Festival, Louisiana!

Don't miss the start of the festival – It's on the first Saturday of December. Come and enjoy the early afternoon parade, an arts show, and displays of the Louisiana cuisine. There is also a spectacular evening firework show with music and a laser show in addition to live entertainment. Most spectacularly, after the firework display is the lighting-up ceremony along the Cane River – a display of 300,000 lights. Enjoy the bright lights of the Cane River banks until after New Year's Day.

Nha Trang Carnival – Exciting Times in June!

Join the opening ceremony – an impressive show giving the history of Nha Trang, a city with a good climate provided by nature. Then comes the firework display, which lights up the whole city, followed by the street carnival the next morning. You will also like various traditional, musical performances by the Viet, the Cham, and other ethnic peoples, in addition to performances of songs about the sea. The following day brings the excitement of sea swimming, yachting, boating, and wind-surfing events. When the night falls, the public dances begin – you are welcome to join in! Don't miss this colorful mix of cultures!

a) Read the brochures then find the words which mean:

- | | |
|--|--------------------|
| 1. A public procession to celebrate an event | parade |
| 2. A style of cooking | cuisine |
| 3. very impressive | spectacular |
| 4. living, not recorded previously | live |
| 5. weather | climate |
| 6. of particular cultural groups | ethnic |
| 7. sailing | yachting |
| 8. a combination of different types | mix |

b) Read the brochures again and decide if the sentences are True (T) or false (F)

1. The Natchitoches Christmas Festival starts from the first Saturday of December **T**
2. There is a spectacular firework display only at the Natchitoches Christmas Festival. **F**
3. Both festivals go on for a long time. **F**
4. Both festivals have evening celebrations **T**
5. In both of the festivals there are displays of local cuisine. **F**

c) Answer the questions

1. Where is the Natchitoches Christmas Festival held?

It is held in Louisiana, USA

2. Why shouldn't visitors miss the beginning of the Natchitoches Christmas Festival?

Because there is an early afternoon parade, an arts show, and displays of the Louisiana cuisine

3. The city is called the City of Lights during the Natchitoches Christmas Festival. Why is that?

Because of the lighting-up of 300,000 lights along the Cane River during the festival

4. What performances can visitors see on the second day at the Nha Trang Festival?

Music performances and performances of songs about the sea

5. How many visitors feel about the events on the third day?

They are exciting

6. How do you think the Nha Trang Festival is different from other festivals in Vietnam?

The Nha Trang Festival is a colourful mix of many cultures

X. There are five prepositions mistakes in the passage below. Can you find and correct them?

Tet's preparations and celebrations used to be spread over months, but nowadays the holiday is much shorter. A great deal of excitement still builds **in** well before Tet. Streets are decorated **on** colored lights and red banner. Shops are full **with** goods. People are busy buying gifts, cleaning and decorating their houses and cooking traditional foods.

Homes are often decorated with plants and flowers at this time. Peach blossom is traditional at Tet in the North while apricot blossom is traditional in the South. The kumquat tree **in** its ripe deep orange fruits is popular throughout the country. One of Tet's most special food is *banh chung*, which is made **up** sticky rice, green beans and fatty pork. Mut, which is candied fruits such as sugared apples, plums or tomatoes, is also popular.

1. in -> up

4. In -> with

2. on -> with

5. Up -> from

3. with -> of

XI. Use the information below to write a paragraph of about 150 words about the Lim Festival.

Suggested answer

The Lim Festival opens annually on the 13th day of the first lunar month in the year. The festival takes place in Tien Du District, Bac Ninh province. It's the festival of Quan ho singing, which has become one of UNESCO's intangible Cultural Heritages since 2009. The most attractive activity of the festival is *quan ho* singing performance. Female singers (*lien chi*) are beautiful in *ao tu than* (four-panel traditional dress) and *quai thao* hat. Male singers (*lien anh*) are elegant in *ao the* and *khan xep*. They sing love duets together in pair of one male and one female. Moreover, on the lake in front of the Lim Communal House, visitors can catch the scenery of *quan ho* singing performance on a dragon boat. Besides, the Lim Festival is also space for various folk games such as bamboo swings playing, wrestling, cocks fighting, tugging war, blind man's buff, human chess, pot beating, etc. Coming to the Lim Festival, visitors can know more about culture of Vietnamese people in Red River Delta region.

TEST - FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM (UNIT 5)

A – PHONICS AND VOCABULARY

I. Find the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|---------------|----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. festival | B. history | C. station | D. resource |
| 2. A. begin | B. important | C. devote | D. statue |
| 3. A. convince | B. ugly | C. weather | D. customer |
| 4. A. flourishing | B. bicycle | C. impress | D. caution |
| 5. A. celebration | B. production | C. competition | D. anniversary |

II. Cross out the word that has no partner

to have	some food
To order	
To call	
To buy	
grilled	salad
	fish
	meat
	chicken
To recommend	a restaurant
	a dish
	a bill
	a book

To bake	bread
	soup
	potatoes
	cakes
To taste	food
	a dish
	a receipt
	a drink
To make	a reservation
To change	
To do	
To confirm	

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences

- The extended family arranged marriage, _____ individuals were consulted on the choice of their mate.
A. so B. and C. yet D. otherwise
- _____ the first footer has a good reputation and success, the family believes that they will receive luck and good fortune throughout the year.
A. if B. when C. because D. moreover

3. Parents usually buy new clothes and shoes for their children a month before the New Year; _____, children cannot wear their new clothes until the first day of the New Year and onward.

A. moreover B. although C. otherwise D. however

4. The left hand is customarily used for cleaning, _____ Indian people never eat with their left hand.

A. so B. but C. however D. therefore

5. The yellow apricot blossoms are often seen in Southern Vietnam, _____, the pink peach blossoms are known as the primary flower in every home in the North.

A. moreover B. however C. therefore D. yet

6. _____ children have performed a certain greeting before receiving lucky money, adults return good advice, encouraging children to keep up with the schoolwork, and obeying their parents.

A. although B. if C. when D. however

7. _____ the Vietnamese believe in fate in marriage, they also think that marriage arrangement plays some roles in activating a positive or negative fate

A. even though B. However C. Therefore D. yet

8. _____ the Chinese greet other people, they have the custom of bowing, folding their hands on chest.

A. because B. Although C. When D. However

IV. Fill in the blanks with the correct verbs from the box. Maybe some blanks can be filled with more than one option.

Honour	perform	commemorate	celebrate
worship	symbolizes	pray	hold

1. On New Year's Eve, in front of the altar, people _____ for health and luck in the New Year.

2. Mid-Autumn Festival is held on 15th day of the eight lunar month to _____ the biggest full moon in the year.

3. To express their gratitude, villagers from Le Mat village built a temple to _____ the man who saved the princess and made their region wealthy as well as adding catching snakes to their career.

4. To _____ the event when An Duong Vuong started moving into the citadel, residents of 12 hamlets belonging to Co Loa held CoLoa Citadel Festival within a 10-day period.

5. "Che Troi Nuoc", special dessert consisting of a sweet soup with round balls made from rice and sugar sauce, _____ reunion.

6. Ba Na villagers _____ the Village Land Praying Ceremony in preparation for the new crop or before moving to new land

7. During the Trung Sisters Temple Festival, villagers_____folk games and artistic events, such as dragon and lion dancing, *cheo* singing, wrestling competition, swinging, etc.
8. Taking place on the third lunar month in Truong Yen Commune, Ninh Binh province, Hoa Lu Festival is celebrated to_____the King Dinh Tien Hoang and Le Dai Hanh

B – READING

V. Read the following paragraph and complete it with one suitable word

Tet is celebrated on the first day (1)_____the Lunar New Year. Some weeks before the New Year, the Vietnamese (2)_____their houses and paint the walls. New clothes are bought (3)_____the occasion. One or two days (4)_____the festival, people make *chung* cake, (5)_____is the traditional cake. On the New Year's Eve, the whole family gets together for a dinner. On the New Year morning, all the (6)_____of the family respect to the elders by beautiful words. In return, they receive lucky money (7)_____in red tiny envelopes. Then people go to (8)_____their neighbours, friends and relatives.

VI. Read the passage and decide which statements are True (T) or False (F)

Mid-Autumn Festival

In Vietnam, *Tet Trung Thu* or the Mid-Autumn Festival is one of the most popular family holidays. It is held on the 15th day of the August lunar month.

Vietnamese families plan their activities around their children on this special day. In a Vietnamese folklore, parents were working so hard to prepare for the harvest that they left the children playing by themselves. To make up for lost time, parents would use the Mid-Autumn Festival as an opportunity to show their love and appreciation for their children.

Appropriately the Mid-Autumn Festival is also called the Children's Festival. In the United States, this tradition continues in many Vietnamese American communities. *Trung Thu* activities are often centered on children and education. Parents buy lanterns for their children so that they can participate in a candlelit lantern procession at dawn. Lanterns represent brightness while the procession symbolizes success in school. Vietnamese markets sell a variety of lanterns, but most popular children's lantern is the star lantern. Other children's activities include arts and crafts in which children make face masks and lanterns. Children also perform traditional Vietnamese dances for adults and participate in contests for prizes and scholarships. Unicorn dancers are also very popular in *Trung Thu* festivities.

Like the Chinese, Vietnamese parents tell their children fairy tales and serve mooncakes and other special treats under the silvery moon. A favourite folklore is a carp that wanted to become a dragon, The carp worked and eventually transformed itself into a dragon. This is the story behind the mythical symbol, *Cá hóa rồng*. Parents use this story to encourage their children to work hard so that they can become whomever they want to be.

1.	In Vietnam, the Mid-Autumn Festival is held on the 15 th day of every month	
2.	To make up for lost time, parents would use the Mid-Autumn Festival as an opportunity to show their love and appreciation for their children.	
3.	Lanterns represent brightness while the procession symbolizes success in school	
4.	It's difficult for children to buy lanterns in Vietnamese markets.	

5.	In Mid-Autumn Festival, Vietnamese parents tell their children fairy tales and serve mooncakes and other special treats under the silvery moon.	
----	---	--

C- WRITING

VII. Rearrange the words and phrases given to make meaningful sentences

1. Thanks / technology // , / now / can / for / preserve / our / to / culture / future / we / generations /./

2. At / pagoda / , / we / Buddha / worship / tray / Huong / of / a / fruit / offer / to /him/ ./

3. In / Japan / , / to / your / the / remember / shoes / at / entrance / to / take off / all / homes / , / businesses / and / hotels / most / . /

4. Vietnamese / plan / activities / families / around / their / children / on / many / their / special / days / . /

5. At / children / have / to / , / Easter / independent / be / and / look / themselves / after / . /

VIII. Rewrite the following sentences so that their meaning stays the same, using the words given

1. The hotel we saw first was rather expensive. We decided to look for another. (so)

2. There are more and more cars sold every day. The traffic in the streets is becoming more and more difficult. (because)

3. The supermarket in our neighbourhood no longer opens. Very few people live there. (as)

4. She lost her job because she was inexperienced. (because of)

5. My mother didn't mind our singing. We did it quietly. (since)

KEY TO TEST - FESTIVALS IN VIETNAM (UNIT 5)

A – PHONICS AND VOCABULARY

I. Find the word which has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. festival

B. history

C. station

D. resource

2. A. begin B. important C. devote **D. statue**
3. **A. convince** B. ugly C. weather D. customer
4. A. flourishing B. bicycle **C. impress** D. caution
5. A. celebration **B. production** C. competition D. anniversary

II. Cross out the word that has no partner

to have	some food
To order	
To call	
To buy	
grilled	salad
	fish
	meat
	chicken
To recommend	a restaurant
	a dish
	a bill
	a book

To bake	bread
	soup
	potatoes
	cakes
To taste	food
	a dish
	a receipt
	a drink
To make	a reservation
To change	
To do	
To confirm	

III. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences

1. The extended family arranged marriage, _____ individuals were consulted on the choice of their mate.

- A. so B. and **C. yet** D. otherwise

2. _____ the first footer has a good reputation and success, the family believes that they will receive luck and good fortune throughout the year.

- A. if** B. when C. because D. moreover

3. Parents usually buy new clothes and shoes for their children a month before the New Year; _____, children cannot wear their new clothes until the first day of the New Year and onward.

- A. moreover B. although C. otherwise **D. however**

4. The left hand is customarily used for cleaning, _____ Indian people never eat with their left hand.

- A. so** B. but C. however D. therefore

- To change

- ## To do

- To confirm

5. The yellow apricot blossoms are often seen in Southern Vietnam, _____, the pink peach blossoms are known as the primary flower in every home in the North.

- A. moreover **B. however** C. therefore D. yet

6. _____ children have performed a certain greeting before receiving lucky money, adults return good advice, encouraging children to keep up with the schoolwork, and obeying their parents.

- A. although B. if **C. when** D. however

7. _____ the Vietnamese believe in fate in marriage, they also think that marriage arrangement plays some roles in activating a positive or negative fate

- A. even though** B. However C. Therefore D. yet

8. _____ the Chinese greet other people, they have the custom of bowing, folding their hands on chest.

- A. because B. Although **C. When** D. However

IV. Fill in the blanks with the correct verbs from the box. Maybe some blanks can be filled with more than one option.

Honour	perform	commemorate	celebrate
worship	symbolizes	pray	hold

1. On New Year's Eve, in front of the altar, people **pray** for health and luck in the New Year.

2. Mid-Autumn Festival is held on 15th day of the eight lunar month to **celebrate** the biggest full moon in the year.

3. To express their gratitude, villagers from Le Mat village built a temple to **honour/worship** the man who saved the princess and made their region wealthy as well as adding catching snakes to their career.

4. To **commemorate** the event when An Duong Vuong started moving into the citadel, residents of 12 hamlets belonging to Co Loa held CoLoa Citadel Festival within a 10-day period.

5. "Che Troi Nuoc", special dessert consisting of a sweet soup with round balls made from rice and sugar sauce, **symbolizes** reunion.

6. Ba Na villagers **hold** the Village Land Praying Ceremony in preparation for the new crop or before moving to new land

7. During the Trung Sisters Temple Festival, villagers **perform** folk games and artistic events, such as dragon and lion dancing, *cheo* singing, wrestling competition, swinging, etc.

8. Taking place on the third lunar month in Truong Yen Commune, Ninh Binh province, Hoa Lu Festival is celebrated to **honour / worship** the King Dinh Tien Hoang and Le Dai Hanh

B – READING

V. Read the following paragraph and complete it with one suitable word

Tet is celebrated on the first day (1) **of** the Lunar New Year. Some weeks before the New Year, the Vietnamese (2) **clean** their houses and paint the walls. New clothes are bought (3) **for** the

occasion. One or two days (4) **before** the festival, people make *chung* cake, (5) **which** is the traditional cake. On the New Year's Eve, the whole family gets together for a dinner. On the New Year morning, all the (6) **members** of the family respect to the elders by beautiful words. In return, they receive lucky money (7) **wrapped** in red tiny envelopes. Then people go to (8) **visit** their neighbours, friends and relatives.

VI. Read the passage and decide which statements are True (T) or False (F)

Mid-Autumn Festival

In Vietnam, *Tet Trung Thu* or the Mid-Autumn Festival is one of the most popular family holidays. It is held on the 15th day of the August lunar month.

Vietnamese families plan their activities around their children on this special day. In a Vietnamese folklore, parents were working so hard to prepare for the harvest that they left the children playing by themselves. To make up for lost time, parents would use the Mid-Autumn Festival as an opportunity to show their love and appreciation for their children.

Appropriately the Mid-Autumn Festival is also called the Children's Festival. In the United States, this tradition continues in many Vietnamese American communities. *Trung Thu* activities are often centered on children and education. Parents buy lanterns for their children so that they can participate in a candlelit lantern procession at dawn. Lanterns represent brightness while the procession symbolizes success in school. Vietnamese markets sell a variety of lanterns, but most popular children's lantern is the star lantern. Other children's activities include arts and crafts in which children make face masks and lanterns. Children also perform traditional Vietnamese dances for adults and participate in contests for prizes and scholarships. Unicorn dancers are also very popular in *Trung Thu* festivities.

Like the Chinese, Vietnamese parents tell their children fairy tales and serve mooncakes and other special treats under the silvery moon. A favourite folklore is a carp that wanted to become a dragon. The carp worked and eventually transformed itself into a dragon. This is the story behind the mythical symbol, *Cá hóa rồng*. Parents use this story to encourage their children to work hard so that they can become whomever they want to be.

1.	In Vietnam, the Mid-Autumn Festival is held on the 15 th day of every month	F
2.	To make up for lost time, parents would use the Mid-Autumn Festival as an opportunity to show their love and appreciation for their children.	T
3.	Lanterns represent brightness while the procession symbolizes success in school	T
4.	It's difficult for children to buy lanterns in Vietnamese markets.	F
5.	In Mid-Autumn Festival, Vietnamese parents tell their children fairy tales and serve mooncakes and other special treats under the silvery moon.	F

C- WRITING

VII. Rearrange the words and phrases given to make meaningful sentences

1. Thanks / technology // , / now / can / for / preserve / our / to / culture / future / we / generations ./

Thanks to technology, we can now preserve our culture for future generations

2. At / pagoda / , / we / Buddha / worship / tray / Huong / of / a / fruit / offer / to / him/ . /

At Huong pagoda, we offer Buddha a tray of fruit to worship him

3. In / Japan / , / to / your / the / remember / shoes / at / entrance / to / take off / all / homes / , / businesses / and / hotels / most / . /

In Japan, remember to take off your shoes at the entrance to all homes, most businesses and hotels

4. Vietnamese / plan / activities / families / around / their / children / on / many / their / special / days / . /

Vietnamese families plan their activities around their children on many special days

5. At / children / have / to / , / Easter / independent / be / and / look / themselves / after / . /

At Easter, children have to be independent and look after themselves

VIII. Rewrite the following sentences so that their meaning stays the same, using the words given

1. The hotel we saw first was rather expensive. We decided to look for another. (so)

The hotel we saw first was rather expensive so we decided to look for another

2. There are more and more cars sold every day. The traffic in the streets is becoming more and more difficult. (because)

The traffic in the streets is becoming more and more difficult because there are more and more cars sold everyday.

3. The supermarket in our neighbourhood no longer opens. Very few people live there. (as)

The supermarket in our neighbourhood no longer opens as very few people live there

4. She lost her job because she was inexperienced. (because of)

She lost her job because of her inexperience

5. My mother didn't mind our singing. We did it quietly. (since)

My mother didn't mind our singing since we did it quietly

UNIT 6 (E8)

VOCABULARY

brave (adj)	/breɪv/	Dũng cảm, gan dạ	fox (n)	/fɒks/	Con cáo
Buddha (n)	/'bʊdə/	Bụt, Đức Phật	generous (adj)	/'dʒenərəs/	Hào phóng, rộng rãi
cruel (adj)	/'kru:əl/	độc ác	knight (n)	/naɪt/	hiệp sĩ
cunning (adj)	/'kʌnɪŋ/	xảo quyệt, gian xảo	giant (n)	/'dʒaɪənt/	người khổng lồ
dragon (n)	/'dræɡən/	Con rồng	glitch (n)	/glɪtʃ/	mụp hù thủy
emperor (n)	/'empərə/	Hoàng đế	legend (n)	/'ledʒənd/	truyền thuyết

evil (adj)	/ˈiːvl/	xấu xavề mặt đạo đức	hare (n)	/heə(r)/	Con thỏ
fable (n)	/ˈfeɪbl/	truyện ngụ ngôn	lion (n)	/ˈlaɪən/	Con sư tử
fairy (n)	/ˈfeəri/	tiên, nàng tiên	mean (adj)	/miːn/	Keo kiệt, bủn xỉn
fairy tale (n)	/ˈfeərɪteɪl/	truyện thần tiên, truyện thần kỳ	ogre (n)	/ˈəʊɡə(r)/	quỷ ăn thịt người, yêu tinh
fierce (adj)	/fɪəs/	Hung dữ, dữ tợn	princess (n)	/ˌprɪnˈses/	Công chúa
folk tale (n)	/fəʊkteɪl/	truyện dân gian	tortoise (n)	/ˈtɔːtəs/	Con rùa
wicked (adj)	/ˈwɪkɪd/	xấu xa, độc ác	wolf (n)	/wʊlf/	Con chó sói
woodcutter (n)	/ˈwʊdˌkʌtə(r)/	tiều phu, người đốn củi			

GRAMMAR

Past Simple and Past Continuous

1. The most common use of the **past continuous** tense is to talk about something that was happening around a particular time in the past.

- *What were you doing at 8 o'clock last night? I was watching television.*

I started watching television before 8 o'clock and I continued watching it after 8 o'clock.

- *In 1994 he was working in a small town in Poland.*
- *At 6 o'clock on Saturday morning we were travelling to the airport.*

2. We often use the **past continuous** and the **past simple** tense together. When this happens, the **past continuous** describes a longer, 'background' action or situation and the **past simple** describes the action or events.

- *When I woke up this morning it was raining and my father was singing in the kitchen.*
- *I was walking home, whistling happily, when I saw two masked men run out of the bank.*

Often, the 'action' described by the **past simple** tense *interrupts* the 'situation' described by the **past continuous** tense.

- *I broke my leg when I was skiing.*
- *I was playing a computer game when the doorbell rang.*

Notice that the **past continuous** describes ‘situations’ that go on for some time – ‘skiing’ and ‘playing’ but the **past simple** describes ‘actions’ that happen quickly – ‘broke’ and ‘rang’.

Notice too the important difference between these two sentences.

- *When they arrived, Jeff was cooking dinner.* Jeff started cooking before they arrived.
- *When they arrived, Jeff cooked dinner.* Jeff started cooking dinner after they arrived.

A. PHONETICS

Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others by circling A, B, C or D.

1. A. cartoon B. honor C. culture D. honest
2. A. character B. adventure C. library D. knowledge
3. A. discovery B. calculator C. aero plane D. difficulty
4. A. Argentina B. understand C. lemonade D. Australia
5. A. husband B. married C. castle D. beautiful

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best answer A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. ThachAnh was very _____ when he let Ly Thong and his mother go back to their hometown.
A. selfish B. mean C. generous D. brave
2. The ogre was so _____, and was about to catch ThachSanh with its sharp claws.
A. fierce B. mean C. clever D. ugly
3. ThachSanh was so _____ that he could push back the troops with his magical guitar and rice pot.
A. kind B. clever C. hard working D. fast
4. AnTiem was very _____ to move to a deserted island.
A. brave B. honest C. kind D. generous
5. Khoai was very _____, but his landowner was _____.
A. lazy-cunning B. clever-brave C. honest – wise D. honest – cunning
6. Tam was a very _____ girl who had to work all day.

A. mean B. generous C. hard-working D. lazy

7. Cam was very _____ when she killed the nightingale, cooked it and threw the feathers in the Imperial Garden.

A. wicked B. ugly C. honest D. mean

8. LuuBinh was very _____ to invite Duong Le to come and live with him.

A. selfish B. kind C. mean D. brave

II. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions

1. She is famous _____ her intelligence.

2. It was so interesting book that he couldn't put it _____.

3. _____ the right bank of the river, you will see two ancient towers of the village.

4. Everyone was sure that there is nothing wrong _____ the Prince at last.

5. I am looking forward _____ seeing you and your family again.

6. Vietnamese people make chung cakes and day cakes _____ the Tet holiday.

7. We are grateful _____ our friends, who have done everything for us in the making of the film.

8. My grandfather started to give _____ telling folk tales to children a year ago.

9. The will was found three days _____ his death.

10. She lives unhappily because her stepmother isn't kind _____ her.

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or Past continuous tense.

1. Last night I (read) _____ when suddenly I (hear) _____ a shout.

2. The postman (come) _____ while I (have) _____ lunch.

3. When we (go) out, it (rain).

4. (You/ watch) TV when I (phone) you?

5. We (meet) Ann at the party yesterday, she (wear) a lovely white dress.

6. The boys (break) the window while they (play) football.

7. I was home late, but my friends (wait) when I (arrive).

8. He said that he (not drive) fast when the accident (happen).

9. Tom (fall) off the ladder while he (paint) the ceiling.

10. What (you/ do) at this time yesterday?

D. READING

I. Read the following passage and then answer the questions

Once upon a time, there was a girl called Cinderella who did all the work in the kitchen while her lazy sisters did nothing. One night her sisters went to a ball at the palace. Cinderella was left home, feeling very sad. After a time her fairy godmother appeared and told Cinderella that she could go to the ball, but she had to return home by midnight. So she went to the ball in a beautiful dress and a wonderful coach. She danced with prince, but at midnight she ran back home, leaving one of her shoes on the dance floor. The prince wanted to see her again and went to every house in the capital until he found that the shoe was the right size for Cinderella. The prince and Cinderella were married and lived happily ever after.

1. Where did Cinderella's sisters go one night?
2. How was Cinderella when she was left at home?
3. Who appeared and helped Cinderella?
4. What did Cinderella do at the ball?
5. What was the end of the story?

II. Read this legend and do the tasks that follow

Da Trang and the Magic Pearl

Long ago, there was a hunter named Da Trang who lived near the edge of the forest. One day, when he returned from hunting, he was terrified to see two bright green snakes moving quickly through the grass to the temple! But when he saw them raise their heads to listen to the prayer coming from the nearby temple, he thought, “ They are surely harmless. Maybe they are sacred snakes.”

When passing the temple one morning, Da Trang saw a big cobra, jaws open, attacking the snakes. He raised his bow and shot the cobra to save the snakes.

When the arrow struck him, the cobra hissed horribly and moved away as the male snake chased it down the hill. The female snake was badly wounded, and soon died. Da Trang buried her under the temple.

The male snake gave him a beautiful white pearl to allow one to understand the language of animals as a gift of its gratitude.

The King had Da Trang bring the magic pearl to the palace because the King was very enthusiastic to hear about the animals' conversations and spent a great deal of time listening to them.

One beautiful spring morning, the King and Da Trang went sailing. While the fish were singing happily, Da Trang burst out laughing and dropped the magic pearl into the sea.

Da Trang ordered an army of workmen who brought hundreds of cartloads of sand to the seashore to fill up the sea to find his lost pearl, but he failed and died. Before death, he asked to be buried near the seashore.

Nowadays, when you are at the seashore early in the morning, you can see many small crabs, believed to do the work of Da Trang.

Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
_____	1. Prayer (n)	A. having a connection with a god
_____	2. Sacred (a)	B. to make a sound like a long “s”
_____	3. Bow (n)	C. the words that you use when you speak to a god.
_____	4. Hiss (v)	D. a weapon for shooting arrows

Task 2: Read the passage and answer the following questions

5. Why did Da Trang think that the two bright green snakes were harmless?
6. What did he do to save the snakes when the cobra attacked them?
7. What did the male snake give him? Why?
8. Why was the pearl called a magic one?
9. Why did Da Trang lose the magic pearl?
10. What did he do before his death?

WRITING

I. Use the suggested words and phrases to make meaningful sentences.

1. We/ have/ dinner/ when/ telephone/ ring.
2. I/ walk/ along/ street/ when/ sudden/ I/ hear/ footsteps/ me./ / Somebody/ follow/ me./ / I/ frighten/ and/ start/ run./ /
3. When/ we/ watch/ a/ television program/ call/ “Little flowers”/ last night/ the electricity/ go/ out./ /
4. What/ be/ you/ and/ friends/ do/ at/ 4 p.m/ yesterday/ afternoon/?/

5. While/ I/ wait/ at/ the/ bus stop/,/ it/ start/ rain/ heavily/,/

KEY UNIT 6

A. PHONETICS

Find the word whose stress pattern is different from the others by circling A, B, C or D.

1. **A. cartoon** B. honor C. culture D. honest
2. A. character **B. adventure** C. library D. knowledge
3. **A. discovery** B. calculator C. aero plane D. difficulty
4. A. Argentina B. understand C. lemonade **D. Australia**
5. A. husband B. married **C. cassette** D. beautiful

B. VOCABULARY AND GRAMMAR

I. Choose the best answer A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. ThachAnh was very _____ when he let Ly Thong and his mother go back to their hometown.
A. selfish B. mean C. **generous** D. brave
2. The ogre was so _____, and was about to catch ThachSanh with its sharp claws.
A. **fierce** B. mean C. clever D. ugly
3. ThachSanh was so _____ that he could push back the troops with his magical guitar and rice pot.
A. kind B. **clever** C. hard working D. fast
4. AnTiem was very _____ to move to a deserted island.
A. **brave** B. honest C. kind D. generous
5. Khoai was very _____, but his landowner was _____.
A. lazy-cunning B. clever-brave C. honest – wise **D. honest – cunning**
6. Tam was a very _____ girl who had to work all day.
A. mean B. generous **C. hard-working** D. lazy
7. Cam was very _____ when she killed the nightingale, cooked it and threw the feathers in the Imperial Garden.
A. wicked B. ugly C. honest D. mean

8. Luu Binh was very _____ to invite Duong Le to come and live with him.

A. selfish **B. kind** C. mean D. brave

II. Complete the sentences with the correct prepositions

1. She is famous **for** _____ her intelligence.

2. It was so interesting book that he couldn't put it **down** _____.

3. **on** _____ the right bank of the river, you will see two ancient towers of the village.

4. Everyone was sure that there is nothing wrong **with** _____ the Prince at last.

5. I am looking forward **to** _____ seeing you and your family again.

6. Vietnamese people make chung cakes and day cakes **on** _____ the Tet holiday.

7. We are grateful **to** _____ our friends, who have done everything for us in the making of the film.

8. My grandfather started to give **up** _____ telling folk tales to children a year ago.

9. The will was found three days **after** _____ his death.

10. She lives unhappily because her stepmother isn't kind **to** _____ her.

III. Put the verbs in brackets into the Past Simple or Past continuous tense.

1. Last night I (read) **_WAS READING_** _____ when suddenly I (hear) **_HEARD_** _____ a shout.

2. The postman (come) **_CAME_** _____ while I (have) **_WAS HAVING_** _____ lunch.

3. When we (go) **_WENT_** _____ out, it (rain) **_WAS RAINING_** _____.

4. (You/ watch) **_WERE YOU WATCHING_** _____ TV when I (phone) **_PHONED_** _____ you?

5. We (meet) **_MET_** _____ Ann at the party yesterday, she (wear) **_WAS WEARING_** _____ a lovely white dress.

6. The boys (break) **_BROKE_** _____ the window while they (play) **_WERE PLAYING_** _____ football.

7. I was home late, but my friends (wait) **_WERE WAITING_** _____ when I (arrive) **_ARRIVED_** _____.

8. He said that he (not drive) **_WAS NOT DRIVING_** _____ fast when the accident (happen) **_HAPPENED_** _____.

9. Tom (fall) _FELL_ off the ladder while he (paint) _WAS PAINTING_ the ceiling.
10. What (you/ do) _WERE YOU DOING_ at this time yesterday?

D. READING

I. Read the following passage and then answer the questions

Once upon a time, there was a girl called Cinderella who did all the work in the kitchen while her lazy sisters did nothing. One night her sisters went to a ball at the palace. Cinderella was left home, feeling very sad. After a time her fairy godmother appeared and told Cinderella that she could go to the ball, but she had to return home by midnight. So she went to the ball in a beautiful dress and a wonderful coach. She danced with prince, but at midnight she ran back home, leaving one of her shoes on the dance floor. The prince wanted to see her again and went to every house in the capital until he found that the shoe was the right size for Cinderella. The prince and Cinderella were married and lived happily ever after.

1. Where did Cinderella's sisters go one night?

One night her sisters went to a ball at the palace.

2. How was Cinderella when she was left at home?

She felt very sad.

3. Who appeared and helped Cinderella?

Her/ the fairy godmother appeared and helped her.

4. What did Cinderella do at the ball?

She danced with the prince.

5. What was the end of the story?

The prince and Cinderella were married and lived happily ever after.

II. Read this legend and do the tasks that follow

Da Trang and the Magic Pearl

Long ago, there was a hunter named Da Trang who lived near the edge of the forest. One day, when he returned from hunting, he was terrified to see two bright green snakes moving quickly through the grass to the temple! But when he saw them raise their heads to listen to the prayer coming from the nearby temple, he thought, " They are surely harmless. Maybe they are sacred snakes."

When passing the temple one morning, Da Trang saw a big cobra, jaws open, attacking the snakes. He raised his bow and shot the cobra to save the snakes.

When the arrow struck him, the cobra hissed horribly and moved away as the male snake chased it down the hill. The female snake was badly wounded, and soon died. Da Trang buried her under the temple.

The male snake gave him a beautiful white pearl to allow one to understand the language of animals as a gift of its gratitude.

The King had Da Trang bring the magic pearl to the palace because the King was very enthusiastic to hear about the animals' conversations and spent a great deal of time listening to them.

One beautiful spring morning, the King and Da Trang went sailing. While the fish were singing happily. Da Trang burst out laughing and dropped the magic pearl into the sea.

Da Trang ordered an army of workmen who brought hundreds of cartloads of sand to the seashore to fill up the sea to find his lost pearl, but he failed and died. Before death, he asked to be buried near the seashore.

Nowadays, when you are at the seashore early in the morning, you can see many small crabs, believed to do the work of Da Trang.

Task 1: Match a word in column A with its definition in column B, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	A	B
___C___	11. Prayer (n)	A. having a connection with a god
___A___	12. Sacred (a)	B. to make a sound like a long "s"
___D___	13. Bow (n)	C. the words that you use when you speak to a god.
___B___	14. Hiss (v)	D. a weapon for shooting arrows

Task 2: Read the passage and answer the following questions

15. Why did Da Trang think that the two bright green snakes were harmless?

Because he saw them raise their heads to listen to prayer coming from the nearby temple.

16. What did he do to save the snakes when the cobra attacked them?

He raised his bow and shot the cobra to save the snakes.

17. What did the male snake give him? Why?

The male snake gave him a beautiful white pearl as a gift of its gratitude.

18. Why was the pearl called a magic one?

Because it allowed one to understand the language of animals.

19. Why did Da Trang lose the magic pearl?

Because he dropped the magic pearl into the sea.

20. What did he do before his death?

He ordered an army of workmen who brought hundreds of cartloads of sand to the seashore to fill up the sea to find his lost pearl.

WRITING

I. Use the suggested words and phrases to make meaningful sentences.

1. We/ have/ dinner/ when/ telephone/ ring.

We were having dinner when the telephone rang.

2. I/ walk/ along/ street/ when/ sudden/ I/ hear/ footsteps/ me./ Somebody/ follow/ me./ I/ frighten/ and/ start/ run./

I was walking along the street when suddenly I heard footsteps behind me.

Somebody was following me. I was frightened and started to run.

3. When/ we/ watch/ a/ television program/ call/ "Little flowers"/ last night/ the electricity/ go/ out./

When we were watching a television program called "Little flowers" last night, the electricity went out.

4. What/ be/ you/ and/ friends/ do/ at/ 4 p.m/ yesterday/ afternoon/?/

What were you and your friends doing at 4 p.m yesterday afternoon?

5. While/ I/ wait/ at/ the/ bus stop/,/ it/ start/ rain/ heavily./

While I was waiting at the bus stop, it started to rain heavily.

TEST 6

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

1. A. folk B. plot C. ogre D. golden
2. A. brave B. fable C. castle D. tale
3. A. suggest B. cunnung C. luxury D. ugly
4. A. heaven B. mistreat C. ahead D. jealous
5. A. shout B. found C. announce D. couple

II. Complete the sentences with the opposite words of the adjectives in brackets. Use the words in the box.

1. Once upon a time in a land far, far away, there was a king who was very _____. (mean)
2. The farmer had three sons. All of them were _____. (coward)
3. One day, a _____ prince came galloping up to the castle. (ugly)
4. The _____ witch turned the prince into a frog. (kind)
5. The _____ ogre believed what he said and released him. (clever)
6. The tortoise knows that it cannot run as _____ as the hare. (slow)
7. The tiger was _____, it wanted to eat the woodcutter after he rescued it from the trap. (honest)
8. The king and the queen were very _____ because the princess was rescued. (sad)

9. It was a_____knight. Everyone in the village liked him. (rude)
 10. Cinderella's stepsisters were ugly,_____and selfish. (hard-working)

III. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

1. A fable is an_____short story that teaches a moral lesson.	IMAGINE
2. Once upon a time there was a happy and_____ladybug.	CHEER
3. Alice was_____when she suddenly heard footsteps behind her.	FRIGHT
4. While Cam lived_____, Tam had to work very hard.	LUXURY
5. Although the old and wicked fairy was not invited, she came to the_____anyway.	CELEBRATE
6. The king and the queen were always_____to keep the princess away from spindles.	CARE
7. Saint Going heard an _____that the emperor needed brave men to protect the country.	ANNOUNCE
8. The villagers talked about the knights'_____when they fought against the dragon.	BRAVE
9. Everyone was scared when the witch made the dog _____disappear.	MAGIC
10. Tam's stepmother and half-sister were_____and wicked.	CRUELTY

IV. Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

1. When the villagers (have)_____a party, a dragon suddenly (appear)_____and tool a fiery breath.
 2. "We (not ride)_____horses to the beach at this time last week", said the knights.
 3. Sinbad and his men (leave)_____the cave while the giant (sleep)_____in his lair.
 4. When their parents (die)_____, the older brother (take)_____almost everything, and only (give)_____the younger brother a cottage and a star fruit tree.
 5. While Cinderella (do) _____the housework, her stepsisters (travel)_____to the ball.

V. Choose the most suitable words given in the box to complete the passage. Use the word once only. There are 3 words that are not used.

1 Beautiful	Cunning	Envy	3 Guarding
2 Jealous	Open	4 Riding	5 Rescue

Once upon a time, in the kingdom of Love, there lived a (1)_____princess. A wicked witch was (2)_____of her beauty. She kidnapped the princess and locked her in a dungeon with a dragon (3)_____at the gate. One day, a handsome prince passed by, (4)_____on his white horse. The princess shouted for help. “ Don’t worry, I will (5)_____you!” said the prince. He killed the dragon and fought with the witch. The princess was saved.

VI. Read the following story and choose the best answer for each question.

Once upon a time, there lived in Morocco one of the richest men on earth. He was King Jodas. He loved gold more than anything else in the world except his lovely, young daughter with silky, black hair and sparkling eyes. Whenever King Jodas walked among his fruit trees and flower bushes, he wished he could turn them all into gold.

Early one morning, a god called Terrus came to visit King Jodas in his palace. He came to reward King Jodas for doing him a favour. Terrus offered to grant King Jodas whatever he wanted on earth. The King immediately asked that everything he touched be turned into gold. Terrus unwillingly granted King Jodas his wish and vanished.

Everything was fine till one fateful day. The King wept aloud in despair as he hugged a golden figurine he loved so much. He did not mean to turn her into gold. He begged Terrus to take away the curse of the golden touch.

- Which of the following was King Jodas;s most favoured?
A. gold B. fruit trees C. flower bushes D. his daughter
- King Jodas’ love for gold tells that he was_____.
A. greedy B. selfish C. rich D. cruel
- Terrus was in Morroco because he_____.
A. wanted to visit King Jodas
B. wanted to return King Jodas a favour.
C. decided to marry King Jodas’ daughter
D. heard about King Jodas’ wish
- King Jodas cried because_____.
A. Terrus was not going to grant him his wish
B. Terrus vanished
C. his daughter was turned into gold

- D. Terrus took away his wish
5. Which of the following titles is the most suitable for the story?
- A. The golden king
 - B. The king and his daughter
 - C. A reward
 - D. The golden touch

VII. Read and choose the best answer

An artist went to a beautiful part of the country for a holiday, and stayed with a farmer. Every day he went out with his paints and brushes and painted from morning to evening, and then when it got dark, he went back to the farm and had a good dinner before he went to bed. At the end of his holiday he wanted to pay the farmer, but the farmer said, "No, I do not want money but give me one of your pictures. What is money? In a week it will all be finished, but your painting will still be here."

The artist was very pleased and thanked the farmer for saying such kind things about his paintings.

The farmer smiled and answered, "It is not that. I have a son in London. He wants to become an artist. When he comes here next month, I will show him your picture, and then he will not want to be an artist any more, I think."

1. Where did the artist spend his holiday?

- A. With his paints and brushes
- B. With a farmer
- C. On a farm
- D. In a beautiful part of the country

2. What did he do during his holiday?

- A. He went out every day.
- B. He made paints and brushes.
- C. He went back to the farm.
- D. He painted all day.

3. What did the farmer ask for at the end of the holiday?

- A. A picture
- B. His wage
- C. many picture
- D. money

4. Why was the artist very pleased with the farmer's request?

- A. Because the farmer had thanked him.
- B. Because he had so many kinds of pictures.
- C. Because he would sell one of his pictures.

D. Because he thought his pictures were so beautiful.

5. Why did the farmer ask the artist for the picture?

A. Because the farmer wanted his son to see the picture.

B. Because the artist didn't want to pay the farmer.

C. Because the farmer wanted to say the kind things about the picture.

D. Because the picture was beautiful.

VIII. Write full sentences to make a passage, using the suggested words and phrases given

1. Hung King/ Temple/ Festival/ take/ place/ 8th/ 11th/ day/ third/ lunar/ month/ PhuTho./

2. This/ festival/ hold/ worship/ Hung Kings/ who/ be/ founders/ also/ first/ emperors/
nation./

3. The/ festival/ features/ process/ the/ foot/ NghiaLinh/ mountain/ the High Temple/ top
mountain./

4. Here/, / there/ ceremony/ offer/ incense/ specialty/ such as/ chung cakes/,/ day cakes/
five-fruit trays/ Kings./

5. Moreover/,/ there/ also/ many/ joy/ activity/ include/ bamboo swings/,/ lion dances/,
wrestling/ and/ xoan/ sing/ performance./

KEY TEST 6

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

6. A. folk B. plot C. ogre D. golden

7. A. brave B. fable C. castle D. tale
 8. A. suggest B. cunning C. luxury D. ugly
 9. A. heaven B. mistreat C. ahead D. jealous
 10. A. shout B. found C. announce D. couple

II. Complete the sentences with the opposite words of the adjectives in brackets. Use the words in the box.

11. Once upon a time in a land far, far away, there was a king who was very generous.
 (mean)
 12. The farmer had three sons. All of them were brave. (coward)
 13. One day, a handsome prince came galloping up to the castle. (ugly)
 14. The wicked witch turned the prince into a frog. (kind)
 15. The stupid ogre believed what he said and released him. (clever)
 16. The tortoise knows that it cannot run as fast as the hare. (slow)
 17. The tiger was dishonest, it wanted to eat the woodcutter after he rescued it
 from the trap. (honest)
 18. The king and the queen were very happy because the princess was
 rescued. (sad)
 19. It was a polite knight. Everyone in the village liked him. (rude)
 20. Cinderella's stepsisters were ugly, lazy and selfish. (hard-working)

III. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

11. A fable is an _____ short story that teaches a moral lesson.	IMAGINARY
12. Once upon a time there was a happy and _____ ladybug.	CHEERFUL
13. Alice was _____ when she suddenly heard footsteps behind her.	FRIGHTENED
14. While Cam lived _____, Tam had to work very hard.	LUXURIOUSLY
15. Although the old and wicked fairy was not invited, she came to the _____ anyway.	CELEBRATION
16. The king and the queen were always _____ to keep the princess away from spindles.	CAREFUL
17. Saint Going heard an _____ that the emperor needed brave men to protect the country.	ANNOUNCEMENT
18. The villagers talked about the knights' _____ when they	BRAVERY

fought against the dragon.	
19. Everyone was scared when the witch made the dog _____ disappear.	MAGICALLY
20. Tam's stepmother and half-sister were _____ and wicked.	CRUEL

IV. Complete the following sentences by putting the verbs in brackets in the correct form.

6. When the villagers (have) _WERE HAVING_ a party, a dragon suddenly (appearED) _____ and tool a fiery breath.
7. "We (not ride) _WEREN'T RIDING_ horses to the beach at this time last week", said the knights.
8. Sinbad and his men (leave) _LEFT_ the cave while the giant (sleep) _WAS SLEEPING_ in his lair.
9. When their parents (die) _DIED_, the older brother (take) _TOOK_ almost everything, and only (give) _GAVE_ the younger brother a cottage and a star fruit tree.
10. While Cinderella (do) _WAS DOING_ the housework, her stepsisters (travel) _WERE TRAVELLING_ to the ball.

V. Choose the most suitable words given in the box to complete the passage. Use the word once only. There are 3 words that are not used.

1 Beautiful	Cunning	Envy	3 Guarding
2 Jealous	Open	4 Riding	5 Rescue

Once upon a time, in the kingdom of Love, there lived a (1) _____ princess. A wicked witch was (2) _____ of her beauty. She kidnapped the princess and locked her in a dungeon with a dragon (3) _____ at the gate. One day, a handsome prince passed by, (4) _____ on his white horse. The princess shouted for help. "Don't worry, I will (5) _____ you!" said the prince. He killed the dragon and fought with the witch. The princess was saved.

VI. Read the following story and choose the best answer for each question.

Once upon a time, there lived in Morocco one of the richest men on earth. He was King Jodas. He loved gold more than anything else in the world except his lovely, young daughter with silky, black hair and sparkling eyes. Whenever King Jodas walked among his fruit trees and flower bushes, he wished he could turn them all into gold.

Early one morning, a god called Terrus came to visit King Jodas in his palace. He came to reward King Jodas for doing him a favour. Terrus offered to grant King Jodas whatever he wanted on earth. The King immediately asked that everything he touched be turned into gold. Terrus unwillingly granted King Jodas his wish and vanished.

Everything was fine till one fateful day. The King wept aloud in despair as he hugged a golden figurine he loved so much. He did not mean to turn her into gold. He begged Terrus to take away the curse of the golden touch.

1. Which of the following was King Jodas's most favoured?
A. gold B. fruit trees C. flower bushes D. his daughter
2. King Jodas' love for gold tells that he was _____.
A. greedy B. selfish C. rich D. cruel
3. Terrus was in Morroco because he _____.
A. wanted to visit King Jodas
B. wanted to return King Jodas a favour.
C. decided to marry King Jodas' daughter
D. heard about King Jodas' wish
4. King Jodas cried because _____.
A. Terrus was not going to grant him his wish
B. Terrus vanished
C. his daughter was turned into gold
D. Terrus took away his wish
5. Which of the following titles is the most suitable for the story?
A. The golden king
B. The king and his daughter
C. A reward
D. The golden touch

VII. Read and choose the best answer

An artist went to a beautiful part of the country for a holiday, and stayed with a farmer. Every day he went out with his paints and brushes and painted from morning to evening, and then when it got dark, he went back to the farm and had a good dinner before he went to bed. At the end of his holiday he wanted to pay the farmer, but the farmer said, "No, I do not want money but give me one of your pictures. What is money? In a week it will all be finished, but

your painting will still be here."

The artist was very pleased and thanked the farmer for saying such kind things about his paintings.

The farmer smiled and answered, "It is not that. I have a son in London. He wants to become an artist. When he comes here next month, I will show him your picture, and then he will not want to be an artist any more, I think."

1. Where did the artist spend his holiday?

A. With his paints and brushes

B. With a farmer

C. On a farm

D. In a beautiful part of the country

2. What did he do during his holiday?

A. He went out every day.

B. He made paints and brushes.

C. He went back to the farm.

D. He painted all day.

3. What did the farmer ask for at the end of the holiday?

A. A picture B. His wage C. many picture D. money

4. Why was the artist very pleased with the farmer's request?

A. Because the farmer had thanked him.

B. Because he had so many kinds of pictures.

C. Because he would sell one of his pictures.

D. Because he thought his pictures were so beautiful.

5. Why did the farmer ask the artist for the picture?

A. Because the farmer wanted his son to see the picture.

B. Because the artist didn't want to pay the farmer.

C. Because the farmer wanted to say the kind things about the picture.

D. Because the picture was beautiful.

VIII. Write full sentences to make a passage, using the suggested words and phrases given

6. Hung King/ Temple/ Festival/ take/ place/ 8th/ 11th/ day/ third/ lunar/ month/ PhuTho./

The Hung King Temple Festival takes place from the 8TH to the 11th day of the third lunar month in PhuTho.

7. This/ festival/ hold/ worship/ Hung Kings/ who/ be/ founders/ also/ first/ emperors/ nation./

This festival is held to worship the Hung Kings who are the founders and also the first emperors of the nation.

8. The/ festival/ features/ process/ the/ foot/ NghiaLinh/ mountain/ the High Temple/ top mountain./

The festival features a procession from the foot of the NghiaLinh Mountain to the High Temple on top of the mountain.

9. Here/, / there/ ceremony/ offer/ incense/ specialty/ such as/ chung cakes/,/ day cakes/ five-fruit trays/ Kings./

Here, there is a ceremony of offering incense and specialties such as chung cakes, day cakes and five-fruit trays to the Kings.

10. Moreover/,/ there/ also/ many/ joy/ activity/ include/ bamboo swings/,/ lion dances/,/ wrestling/ and/ xoan/ sing/ performance./

Moreover, there are also many joyful activities including bamboo swings, lion dances, wrestling and xoan singing performances

UNIT 7

POLLUTION

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

affect	(v)	/ə'fekt/	<i>làm ảnh hưởng</i>	alga	(n)	/'ældʒi:/	<i>tảo</i>
aquatic	(adj)	/ə'kwætɪk/	<i>dưới nước</i>	billboard	(n)	/'bɪlbɔ:d/	<i>biển quảng cáo ngoài trời</i>
blood pressure	(n)	/blʌd'preʃə(r)/	<i>huyết áp</i>	cause	(n,v)	/kɔ:z/	<i>nguyên nhân, gây ra</i>
cholera	(n)	/'kɒlərə/	<i>bệnh tả</i>	come up with	(v)		<i>nghĩ ra</i>
contaminate	(v)	/kən'tæmɪneɪt/	<i>làm bẩn</i>	contaminant	(n)	/kən'tæmɪnənt/	<i>chất gây bẩn</i>
dump	(v)	/dʌmp/	<i>đổ, vứt, bỏ</i>	earplug	(n)	/'iəplʌg/	<i>cái nút tai</i>
effect	(n)	/ɪ'fekt/	<i>kết quả, ảnh hưởng</i>	fine	(n,v)	/fam/	<i>tiền phạt, phạt tiền</i>
float	(v)	/fləʊt/	<i>nổi</i>	groundwater	(n)	/'graʊndwɔ:tə(r)/	<i>nước ngầm</i>

hearing loss	(n)	/ˈhɪərɪŋlɒs/	mất thính lực	illustrate	(v)	/ˈɪləstreɪt/	minh hoạ
litter	(n)	/ˈlɪtə(r)/	rác vụn, vứt rác	measure	(v)	/ˈmeʒə(r)/	đo lường
non-point source pollution	(n)		ô nhiễm không nguồn (nguồn phân tán)	permanent	(adj)	/ˈpɜːmənənt/	vĩnh viễn
point source pollution	(n)		ô nhiễm có nguồn	poison	(n)	/ˈpɔɪzn/	chất độc, làm nhiễm độc
pollutant	(n)	/pəˈluːtənt/	chất gây ô nhiễm	radioactive	(adj)	/ˌreɪdɪəʊˈæktɪv/	thuộc về phóng xạ
radiation	(n)	/ˌreɪdɪˈeɪʃn/	phóng xạ	thermal	(adj)	/ˈθɜːml/	thuộc về nhiệt
untreated	(adj)	/ˌʌnˈtriːtɪd/	không được xử lý	visual	(adj)	/ˈvɪʒuəl/	thuộc về thị giác
sneeze	(v)	/sniːz/	hắt xì hơi	waste	(n)	/weɪst/	rác rưởi, đồ thải
environmental	(adj)	/ɪnˌvaɪrənˈmentl/	thuộc về môi trường	substance	(n)	/ˈsʌbstəns/	chất
fume	(n)	/fjuːm/	khói xe	harmful	(adj)	/ˈhɑːmfl/	có hại
death	(n)	/deθ/	cái chết	dead	(adj)	/ded/	chết
spill	(v)	/spɪl/	làm đổ	to be exposed to		/ɪkˈspəʊzd/	Bị đặt vào tình thế dễ bị (tai nạn,)
defect	(n)	/ˈdiːfekt/	nhược điểm, thiếu sót	dramatic	(adj)	/drəˈmætɪk/	gây ấn tượng sâu sắc, đáng kể
to be aware of		/əˈweə(r)/	nhận thức được	switch	(v)	/swɪtʃ/	chuyển
nuclear power	(n)	/ˈnjuːkliə(r)ˈpaʊə(r)/	năng lượng hạt nhân	renewable	(adj)	/rɪˈnjuːəbl/	có thể hồi phục được
herbicide	(n)	/ˈhɜːbɪsaɪd/	thuốc diệt cỏ	outbreak	(n)	/ˈaʊtbreɪk/	sự bộc phát, bùng nổ
sewage	(n)	/ˈsuːɪdʒ/	chất thải, nước cống	pesticide	(n)	/ˈpestɪsaɪd/	thuốc trừ sâu

- How about + V-ing? => đưa ra gợi ý

Example:

How about stop throwing rubbish in the street?

II. Grammar:

1. Causal clauses (Cause – effect relationships)

Cause	Effect
- because/ since + clause Example: <i>Because/ Since</i> the water is polluted, the fish are dead.	- so + clause Example: The water is polluted, <i>so</i> the fish are dead.
- due to/ because of + st Example: The fish are dead <i>due to/ because of</i> the polluted water.	- to cause st/ to lead to st/ to result in st Example: The polluted water <i>causes/ leads to/ results in</i> the death of the fish.
	- to make sb/ st do st Example: The polluted water <i>makes</i> the fish die.

2. Conditional sentences type 2

* Form:

If - clause	Main clause
If + S1 + V (past simple),	S2 + would/ could/ might + V –infinitive

* **Use:** - to describe a thing which is not true or is unlikely to happen in the present or future.

Example:

If people **didn't throw** rubbish in the street, it **would look** attractive. (But people throw rubbish in the street.)

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- A. scientific B. dramatic C. athletic D. domestic
- A. national B. chemical C. medical D. informal
- A. prehistoric B. economic C. linguistic D. optimistic
- A. medical B. hospital C. politic D. electric
- A. physical B. horrific C. beautiful D. different

II. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

- The of lakes, rivers, oceans or underwater causes water CONTAMINATE

pollution.

2. The street doesn't look because it has a lot of rubbish. ATTRACT
3. The music club made so much noise that the.....complained RESIDE
to its owner.
4. Are all types of pollutionto the health of humans and HARM
animals?
5. The are concerned about the oil spills in East Sea. ENVIRONMENT
6. Dumpingwaste into the lakes and rivers has caused INDUSTRY
serious water pollution.
7. Many people in this area have cholera because they drink TREAT
water.
8. Examples of primary are exhaust fumes from cars, soot POLLUTE
from smoke and ash from volcanic eruption.
9. If we use water, more people will have fresh water. CARE
10. The polluted water results in the of many aquatic animals DIE
and plants.

III. Match each type of pollution with its definition, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	Types of pollution	Definitions
.....	1. Air pollution	A. the increase of temperature caused by human activity
.....	2. Land pollution	B. the contamination of any body of water, such as lakes, groundwater, oceans, etc.
.....	3. Light pollution	C. the contamination of air by smoke and harmful gases.
.....	4. Noise pollution	D. the release of unwanted radioactive material into the environment.
.....	5. Thermal pollution	E. The brightening of the night sky preventing us from seeing stars by improper lighting of communities.
.....	6. Visual pollution	F. the destruction of the earth's surface caused by the misuse of resources and improper dumping of waste.
.....	7. Water pollution	G. anything unattractive or visually damaging to the nearby landscape.
.....	8. Radioactive	H. any loud sounds that are either harmful or annoying to

	pollution	humans and animals.
--	-----------	---------------------

IV. Combine the sentences in each pair into a new sentence that shows a cause – effect relationship. Use the words in brackets.

1. Many rivers and lakes are poisoned. Factories produce waste and pour it into rivers and lakes.
(because)

.....
.

2. The environment is polluted. Birds leave their habitats and plants die. (makes)

.....
.

3. Plastic bags are a major source of waste. We should not throw plastic bags everywhere. (so)

.....
.

4. The food is contaminated. People’s health is poor. (results in)

.....
.

5. Factories release fumes. The air people breathe gets polluted. (due to)

.....
.

V. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form to complete the sentences.

1. If the local people drink the contaminated water, they (have) health problems.

2. If there were more trees in this area, the air (be)fresher.

3. All the aquatic animals (die) if people don’t stop dumping sewage into the lake.

4. Global warming (not happen) if there weren’t too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.

5. If the sun (shine), we will walk to the mountain.

6. If people (stop) digging the street, there wouldn’t be noise pollution in this area.

7. People use a lot of cars and motorcycles. If people (reduce) the use of motor vehicles, there (be) less serious air pollution.

8. If you (not read) these articles, you (not know) the facts about water pollution.
9. If I (be) the president, I (remove).....all the factories out of the city.
10. Your brother (have) hearing problems if he (listen) to too loud music.

VI. Fill in each numbered blank with a correct word to complete the following passage.

Air pollution is a growing problem throughout the world. Indoor air pollution is (1) of the leading causes of lung cancer. Families in developing countries use open stoves for cooking and heating (2) homes. These homes do not have proper ventilation. The smoke, which is (3) of chemicals and carcinogens, gets trapped inside where families eat and sleep. Outdoor pollution also (4) diseases and illness, especially in industrial cities such as Beijing, China, where cancer is (5) leading cause of death. China relies heavily on coal, which is considered the dirtiest (6) of energy. According to the European Union, only one percent of urban dwellers in China breathe clean (7) on an average day. Neighbouring countries including Japan and Korea receive much of China's pollution in the (8) of acid rain. This pollution results mainly from the coal powered factories, which produce inexpensive goods (9) North American and European consumers. Outdoor air pollution is also a concern in many wealthy countries. Those who live and (10) in urban centres such as Los Angeles or Toronto experience many warm days beneath a layer of smog.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits each blank space in the following passage.

Light pollution is not (1) serious as water or air pollution. (2), it is the type of pollution that (3).....more in cities than in rural areas. In the past, we could sit out at night and (4) at glittering stars in the sky and light from objects in the outer space. Nowadays, cities are covered with lights from buildings, streets, advertising displays, many of which direct the lights up into the sky and into many unwanted places. The real problem is that it is very (5) to apply light to almost everything at night. Millions of tons of oil and coal (6) to produce the power to light the sky. Eye strain, (7) of vision and stress are what people may get from light pollution. (8)..... light at night can harm our eyes and also harm the hormones that help us to see things properly.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|--------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. more | B. as | C. much | D. only |
| 2. A. Moreover | B. However | C. Therefore | D. Nevertheless |
| 3. A. happen | B. occur | C. occurs | D. is occurred |
| 4. A. watch | B. see | C. spend | D. gaze |
| 5. A. waste | B. wastes | C. wasting | D. wasteful |
| 6. A. used | B. using | C. is used | D. are used |
| 7. A. lose | B. lost | C. loss | D. losing |
| 8. A. Very much | B. Too much | C. Too many | D. So many |

VIII. Read the passage and decide whether the statements are True (T) or False (F).

There are many causes that lead to water pollution. One main cause of this issue is waste water coming from many factories and then being directly pulled out into water bodies, especially into rivers or seas without any treatment because this is the most convenient way of disposing waste water. Industrial waste consists of some kinds of chemical substances such as sulphur, which is harmful for marine life. Lead is known as the main reason for cancer disease. Cancer has become a popular disease in several communes which are called “cancer villages”. Another cause is the awareness of citizens, people always use water for many purposes and then they dump waste water or garbage directly into rivers, canals and ponds and so on. In 2004, because of a bird flu outbreak in Viet Nam, people threw poultry to water body that made water highly polluted.

Statements	T	F
1. Waste water from many factories which is dumped into water bodies directly causes water pollution.	☐	☐
2. Dumping waste directly into water is the most convenient way of disposing waste water.	☐	☐
3. Sulphur is believed the main reason for cancer.	☐	☐
4. Cancer villages occurred in 2004.	☐	☐
5. Due to lack of awareness, people poisoned water with dead poultry when there was a bird flu outbreak in 2004.	☐	☐

IX. Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first one.

1. The soil is poisoned because farmers use too many pesticides and herbicides.

If

.....

2. I can't help you unless you tell me what's wrong.

If

.....

3. Many people have stomachache due to the contaminated food.

If

.....

4. Stop swimming in that lake, or you will have skin rashes.

If

.....

5. John lives in the area affected by air pollution, so he has breathing problems.

If

.....

X. Use the suggestions below to write a short paragraph of 80-120 words about Land Pollution.

	Land pollution
Definition	Destruction/ earth's land surfaces, directly/ indirectly/ as/ result/ man's activities/ misuse/ land resources
Causes	- Waste/ not disposed of/ properly - Humans throw chemicals / onto/ soil/ in form/ pesticides/ insecticides and fertilizers/ during agricultural practices. - Exploitation/ minerals
Effects	- Cause/ problems/ in human health - Cause various kinds/ cancers - Dump sites and landfills come with serious problems like bad smell and odour in the town
Prevention	3 'R's: Reduce waste, Re-use things and Recycle things.

hearing loss	(n)	/ˈhɪərɪŋlɒs/	mất thính lực	illustrate	(v)	/ˈɪləstreɪt/	minh hoạ
litter	(n)	/ˈlɪtə(r)/	rác vụn, vứt rác	measure	(v)	/ˈmeʒə(r)/	đo lường
non-point source pollution	(n)		ô nhiễm không nguồn (nguồn phân tán)	permanent	(adj)	/ˈpɜːmənənt/	vĩnh viễn
point source pollution	(n)		ô nhiễm có nguồn	poison	(n)	/ˈpɔɪzn/	chất độc, làm nhiễm độc
pollutant	(n)	/pəˈluːtənt/	chất gây ô nhiễm	radioactive	(adj)	/ˌreɪdɪəʊˈæktɪv/	thuộc về phóng xạ
radiation	(n)	/ˌreɪdɪˈeɪʃn/	phóng xạ	thermal	(adj)	/ˈθɜːml/	thuộc về nhiệt
untreated	(adj)	/ˌʌnˈtriːtɪd/	không được xử lý	visual	(adj)	/ˈvɪʒuəl/	thuộc về thị giác
sneeze	(v)	/sniːz/	hắt xì hơi	waste	(n)	/weɪst/	rác rưởi, đồ thải
environmental	(adj)	/ɪnˌvaɪrənˈmentl/	thuộc về môi trường	substance	(n)	/ˈsʌbstəns/	chất
fume	(n)	/fjuːm/	khói xe	harmful	(adj)	/ˈhɑːmfl/	có hại
death	(n)	/deθ/	cái chết	dead	(adj)	/ded/	chết
spill	(v)	/spɪl/	làm đổ	to be exposed to		/ɪkˈspəʊzd/	Bị đặt vào tình thế dễ bị (tai nạn,)
defect	(n)	/ˈdiːfekt/	nhược điểm, thiếu sót	dramatic	(adj)	/drəˈmætɪk/	gây ấn tượng sâu sắc, đáng kể
to be aware of		/əˈweə(r)/	nhận thức được	switch	(v)	/swɪtʃ/	chuyển
nuclear power	(n)	/ˈnjuːkliə(r)ˈpaʊə(r)/	năng lượng hạt nhân	renewable	(adj)	/rɪˈnjuːəbl/	có thể hồi phục được
herbicide	(n)	/ˈhɜːbɪsaɪd/	thuốc diệt cỏ	outbreak	(n)	/ˈaʊtbreɪk/	sự bộc phát, bùng nổ
sewage	(n)	/ˈsuːɪdʒ/	chất thải, nước cống	pesticide	(n)	/ˈpestɪsaɪd/	thuốc trừ sâu

- How about + V-ing? => đưa ra gợi ý

Example:

How about stop throwing rubbish in the street?

II. Grammar:

1. Causal clauses (Cause – effect relationships)

Cause	Effect
- because/ since + clause Example: <i>Because/ Since</i> the water is polluted, the fish are dead.	- so + clause Example: The water is polluted, <i>so</i> the fish are dead.
- due to/ because of + st Example: The fish are dead <i>due to/ because of</i> the polluted water.	- to cause st/ to lead to st/ to result in st Example: The polluted water <i>causes/ leads to/ results in</i> the death of the fish.
	- to make sb/ st do st Example: The polluted water <i>makes</i> the fish die.

2. Conditional sentences type 2

*** Form:**

If - clause	Main clause
If + S1 + V (past simple),	S2 + would/ could/ might + V –infinitive

*** Use:** - to describe a thing which is not true or is unlikely to happen in the present or future.

Example:

If people **didn't throw** rubbish in the street, it **would look** attractive. (But people throw rubbish in the street.)

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word in each line that has different stress pattern.

1. **A. scientific** B. dramatic C. athletic D. domestic
2. A. national B. chemical C. medical **D. informal**
3. A. prehistoric B. economic **C. linguistic** D. optimistic
4. A. medical B. hospital C. politic **D. electric**
5. A. physical **B. horrific** C. beautiful D. different

II. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences.

1. The **contamination** of lakes, rivers, oceans or underwater CONTAMINATE

causes water pollution.

2. The street doesn't look**attractive**..... because it has a lot of rubbish. ATTRACT

3. The music club made so much noise that the**residents**..... complained to its owner. RESIDE

4. Are all types of pollution ...**harmful**..... to the health of humans and animals? HARM

5. The ...**environmentalists**..... are concerned about the oil spills in East Sea. ENVIRONMENT

6. Dumping**industrial**waste into the lakes and rivers has caused serious water pollution. INDUSTRY

7. Many people in this area have cholera because they drink**untreated**..... water. TREAT

8. Examples of primary**pollutants**..... are exhaust fumes from cars, soot from smoke and ash from volcanic eruption. POLLUTE

9. If we use water ...**carefully**..... , more people will have fresh water. CARE

10. The polluted water results in the**death**of many aquatic animals and plants. DIE

III. Match each type of pollution with its definition, writing the answer in each blank.

Answer	Types of pollution	Definitions
... C	1. Air pollution	A. the increase of temperature caused by human activity
... F	2. Land pollution	B. the contamination of any body of water, such as lakes, groundwater, oceans, etc.
..... E ...	3. Light pollution	C. the contamination of air by smoke and harmful gases.
..... H ...	4. Noise pollution	D. the release of unwanted radioactive material into the environment.
... A	5. Thermal pollution	E. The brightening of the night sky preventing us from seeing stars by improper lighting of communities.
... G	6. Visual pollution	F. the destruction of the earth's surface caused by the misuse of resources and improper dumping of waste.

... B	7. Water pollution	G. anything unattractive or visually damaging to the nearby landscape.
..... D ...	8. Radioactive pollution	H. any loud sounds that are either harmful or annoying to humans and animals.

IV. Combine the sentences in each pair into a new sentence that shows a cause – effect relationship. Use the words in brackets.

1. Many rivers and lakes are poisoned. Factories produce waste and pour it into rivers and lakes. (because)

Many rivers and lake are poisoned **because** factories produces **lakes**.

2. The environment is polluted. Birds leave their habitats and plants die. (makes)

The polluted environment **makes** birds leave their.....**die**.

3. Plastic bags are a major source of waste. We should not throw plastic bags everywhere. (so)

Plastic bags are a major source of waste, **so** we should not

4. The food is contaminated. People's health is poor. (results in)

The contaminated food results in people's poor health.

5. Factories release fumes. The air people breathe gets polluted. (due to)

The air people breathe gets polluted due to factory fumes/ fumes release from factories.

V. Put the verbs in brackets into the correct form to complete the sentences.

1. If the local people drink the contaminated water, they (have) **will have** health problems.

2. If there were more trees in this area, the air (be) **would be** fresher.

3. All the aquatic animals (die) ... **will die** if people don't stop dumping sewage into the lake.

4. Global warming (not happen) **wouldn't happen** if there weren't too much carbon dioxide in the atmosphere.

5. If the sun (shine) **shines**, we will walk to the mountain.

6. If people (stop) **stopped** digging the street, there wouldn't be noise pollution in this area.

7. People use a lot of cars and motorcycles. If people (reduce) **reduced** the use of motor vehicles, there (be) **would be** less serious air pollution.

8. If you (not read) **don't read** these articles, you (not know) ... **won't know** the facts about water pollution.
9. If I (be) **were** the president, I (remove) **would remove** all the factories out of the city.
10. Your brother (have) **will have** hearing problems if he (listen) **listens** to too loud music.

VI. Fill in each numbered blank with a correct word to complete the following passage.

Air pollution is a growing problem throughout the world. Indoor air pollution is (1) **one** of the leading causes of lung cancer. Families in developing countries use open stoves for cooking and heating (2) **their** homes. These homes do not have proper ventilation. The smoke, which is (3) **full** of chemicals and carcinogens, gets trapped inside where families eat and sleep. Outdoor pollution also (4) **causes** diseases and illness, especially in industrial cities such as Beijing, China, where cancer is (5) **the** leading cause of death. China relies heavily on coal, which is considered the dirtiest (6) **source** of energy. According to the European Union, only one percent of urban dwellers in China breathe clean (7) **air** on an average day. Neighbouring countries including Japan and Korea receive much of China's pollution in the (8) **form** of acid rain. This pollution results mainly from the coal powered factories, which produce inexpensive goods (9) **for** North American and European consumers. Outdoor air pollution is also a concern in many wealthy countries. Those who live and (10) ... **work** in urban centres such as Los Angeles or Toronto experience many warm days beneath a layer of smog.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits each blank space in the following passage.

Light pollution is not (1) serious as water or air pollution. (2), it is the type of pollution that (3) more in cities than in rural areas. In the past, we could sit out at night and (4) at glittering stars in the sky and light from objects in the outer space. Nowadays, cities are covered with lights from buildings, streets, advertising displays, many of which direct the lights up into the sky and into many unwanted places. The real problem is that it is very (5) to apply light to almost everything at night. Millions of tons of oil and coal (6) to produce the power to light the sky. Eye strain, (7) of vision and stress are what people may get from light pollution.

(8)..... light at night can harm our eyes and also harm the hormones that help us to see things properly.

- | | | | |
|-----------------------|--------------------|------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. more | B. as | C. much | D. only |
| 2. A. Moreover | B. However | C. Therefore | D. Nevertheless |
| 3. A. happen | B. occur | C. occurs | D. is occurred |
| 4. A. watch | B. see | C. spend | D. gaze |
| 5. A. waste | B. wastes | C. wasting | D. wasteful |
| 6. A. used | B. using | C. is used | D. are used |
| 7. A. lose | B. lost | C. loss | D. losing |
| 8. A. Very much | B. Too much | C. Too many | D. So many |

VIII. Read the passage and decide whether the statements are True (T) or False (F).

There are many causes that lead to water pollution. One main cause of this issue is waste water coming from many factories and then being directly pulled out into water bodies, especially into rivers or seas without any treatment because this is the most convenient way of disposing waste water. Industrial waste consists of some kind of chemical substance such as sulphur, which is harmful for marine life. Lead is known as the main reason for cancer disease. Cancer has become a popular disease in several communes which are called “cancer villages”. Another cause is the awareness of citizens, people always use water for many purposes and then they dump waste water or garbage directly into rivers, canals and ponds and so on. In 2004, because of a bird flu outbreak in Viet Nam, people threw poultry to water body that made water highly polluted.

Statements	T	F
1. Waste water from many factories which is dumped into water bodies directly causes water pollution.	☒	☐
2. Dumping waste directly into water is the most convenient way of disposing waste water.	☒	☐
3. Sulphur is believed the main reason for cancer.	☐	☒
4. Cancer villages occurred in 2004.	☐	☒
5. Due to lack of awareness, people poisoned water with dead poultry when there was	☒	☐

a bird flu outbreak in 2004.		
------------------------------	--	--

IX. Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first one.

1. The soil is poisoned because farmers use too many pesticides and herbicides.

If **farmers didn't use too many pesticides and herbicides/ If farmers used fewer pesticides and herbicides, the soil wouldn't be poisoned.**

2. I can't help you unless you tell me what's wrong.

If **you don't tell me what's wrong, I can't help you.**

3. Many people have stomachache due to the contaminated food.

If **the food were not contaminated, many people wouldn't have stomachache.**

4. Stop swimming in that lake, or you will have skin rashes.

If **you don't stop swimming in that lake, you will have skin rashes.**

5. John lives in the area affected by air pollution, so he has breathing problems.

If **John didn't live in the area affected by air pollution, he wouldn't have breathing problems.**

X. Use the suggestions below to write a short paragraph of 80-120 words about Land Pollution.

	Land pollution
Definition	Destruction/ earth's land surfaces, directly/ indirectly/ as/ result/ man's activities/ misuse/ land resources
Causes	- Waste/ not disposed off/ properly - Humans throw chemicals / soil/ in form/ pesticides/ insecticides and fertilizers/ during agricultural practices. - Exploitation/ minerals
Effects	- Cause/ problems/ in human health - Cause various kinds/ cancers - Dump sites and landfills come with serious problems like bad smell and odour. in the town
Prevention	3 'R's: Reduce waste, Re-use things and Recycle things.

Suggested answer:

Land pollution is the destruction of the earth's land surfaces, often directly or indirectly as a result of man's activities and their misuse of land resources. It occurs when waste is not disposed of properly, or can occur when humans throw chemicals onto the soil in the form of pesticides, insecticides and fertilizers during agricultural practices. Exploitation of minerals has also contributed to the destruction of the earth's surface. Contaminated lands can cause problems in human health and also cause various kinds of cancers. Moreover, dump sites and landfills also come with serious problems like very bad smell and odour in the town. The greatest prevention to land pollution is in the three 'R's: Reduce Waste, Reuse things and Recycle things. (122 words)

UNIT 8:

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES, GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

I. New words:

Aborigines (n)	/ˌæbəˈrɪdʒənɪz/	thổ dân châu Úc	official (adj)	/əˈfiʃl/	chính thống/ chính thức
absolutely (adv)	/ˈæbsəluːtli/	tuyệt đối, chắc chắn	parade (n)	/pəˈreɪd/	cuộc diễu hành
accent (n)	/ˈæksent/	giọng điệu	puzzle (n)	/ˈpʌzl/	trò chơi đồ
cattle station (n)	/ˈkætl ˈsteɪʃn/	trại gia súc	schedule (n)	/ˈʃedjuːl/	lịch trình, thời gian biểu
ghost (n)	/gəʊst/	ma	Scots/ Scottish (n)	/skɒts/ ˈskɒtɪʃ/	người Scotland
haunt (v)	/haʊnt/	ám ảnh, ma ám	state (n)	/steɪt/	bang
icon (n)	/ˈaɪkɒn/	biểu tượng	unique (adj)	/juˈniːk/	độc đáo, riêng biệt
kangaroo (n)	/ˌkæŋɡəˈruː/	chuột túi	accept (v)	/əkˈsept/	chấp nhận, nhận
koala (n)	/kəʊˈɑːlə/	gấu túi	social (adj)	/ˈsəʊʃl/	thuộc về xã

					hội
kilt (n)	/kɪlt/	váy ca-rô của đàn ông Scotland	anniversary (n)	/ˌænɪˈvɜːsəri/	ngày kỉ niệm
legend (n)	/ˈledʒənd/	huyền thoại	ceremony (n)	/ˈserəməni/	ngghi lễ
loch (n)	/lɒk/	hồ (phương ngữ ở Scotland)	commemora te (v)	/kəˈmeməreɪt/	kỉ niệm
awesome (adj)	/ˈɔːsəm/	tuyệt vời			

II. Grammar:

- Present tenses: review

- Present simple for future:

We use the present simple with a future meaning when we talk about schedules, programmes, etc. (for example, public transport, cinemas, television, schools ...)

Example:

1. The train to Bristol leaves at 11.15 from platform four.
2. Our school year starts next week, on September 5th.

III. Pronunciation:

B. EXERCISES

I. Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table, according to the stress pattern.

examinee	interviewee	nominee	absentee	trustee
committee	coffee	addressee	referee	devotee
refugee	expellee	Sudanese	jubilee	guarantee

divorcee	payee	Congolese	Burmese	Lebanese
Maltese	Nepalese	trainee	Japanese	Vietnamese
Chinese	Senegalese	Togolese	Viennese	Annamese

Oo	
oO	
Ooo	
oOo	
ooO	
oooO	

II. Fill in each blank in the following passage with ONE word.

English is the (1) language of the Philippines. English-medium education (2) in the Philippines in 1901 after the arrival of some 540 US teachers. English was also chosen for newspapers and magazines, the media, and literary writing.

The latest results from a recent survey suggest that about 65% of the (3) of the Philippines has the (4) to understand spoken and (5) English with 48 person stating that they can write standard English.

The economy is based on English, and successful workers and managers are fluent (6) English. (7), many schools know that their (8) must be fluent in English to be successful.

III. Complete the sentences with the appropriate present tenses of the verbs in brackets.

1. Canadamade up of 10 provinces and three territories. (be)
2. Australia a range of different landscapes, including urban areas mountain ranges, desserts and rain forests. (have)

3. Annually, the National Eisteddfod festival of Wales place for eight days at the start of August. (take)
4. The Statue of Liberty over 12 million immigrants entering the USA through New York Harbor since 1900. (welcome)
5. Each of the 50 states an official state flower so far. (adopt)
6. Since 1965, the maple tree with the leaves the most well-known Canadian symbol. (become)
7. At present, the National Cherry Blossom Festivalin Washington, D.C. to see celebrate spring's arrival. (occur)
8. Maori recognised as an official language of New Zealand since the Maoris Language Act of 1987. (be)

IV. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

<i>accent</i>	<i>brigade</i>	<i>cattle</i>	<i>fence</i>	<i>football</i>
<i>igloo</i>	<i>loch</i>	<i>monument</i>	<i>native</i>	<i>symbol</i>

1. The silver fern is a national of New Zealand.
2. Mount Rushmore is a national carved into a mountain in South Dakota, USA.
3. Trung speaks English like a.....though he comes from Vietnam.
4. I sometimes thought John's sounded English, sometimes American.
5. In Scotland, the word "....." is used to describe any large, enclosed expanse of water.
6. It took six years to build the rabbit-proof..... in Australia.
7. England is the original home of because the sport was invented there.
8. Edinburgh, Scotland was the first city in the world to have his own fire in 1824.

9. Anna Creek Station in South Australia is the world's largest station with an area of 24,000 km².

10. An is a type of shelter built of snow by the Inuit, the Aboriginal peoples in Canada.

V. Give the correct form of the words given to complete to the sentences.

1	Both French and English are languages in Canada.	OFFICE
2	NSW is the of New South Wales, the most popular state in Australia.	ABBREVIATE
3	The gold Coast is famous for its most theme parks in Australia such as Dreamworld and WhiteWater World.	ICON
4	Do you know that the telephone, the television and penicillin are Scottish..... ?	INVENT
5	Visitors can spend days exploring amazing natural beauty of New Zealand.	END
6	There are different kinds of provided throughout Disneyland.	ENTERTAIN
7	Scotland is a.....land and this is noted for its rich and interesting history.	LEGEND
8	We'll take the early from Sydney to Wellington.	FLY
9	Niagara Falls, on the border of the USA and Canada, is one of the most..... scenery in the world.	SPECTACLE
10	There are many tourist..... in London such as British Museum, London Eye and Tower of London.	ATTRACT

VI. Fill each blank with a correct word to finish the passages.

Australia is the 6th biggest country in the world. Only Russia, China, Canada ,USA and Brazil are (1). It is the world's largest island.

Even though the country is so big, it only has about 23 million inhabitants. 88% of all Australians(2) in the big cities or smaller towns which makes big areas of the country empty.

Australia lies in the(3) hemisphere which means that the more south you go, the cooler it gets. In the north parts of the country, it is always hot. The(4) of the country has really hot summers and mild winters. Snow only falls in the Australian Alps and in Tasmania. When we have(5) in Europe and Asia, the Australians have summer. So they celebrate Christmas in the(6) of the summer.

Australia is famous for its wildlife. The most famous(7) is probably the kangaroo. The kangaroo, or roo for short, has(8) Australia's national symbol. The word "kangaroo" was the first Aboriginal(9) in the English language. There are several species of kangaroos. The red kangaroo(10) the biggest ones and they are found in the middle of the country.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C, or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Maple Tree

Trees have (1) a meaningful role in the(2) development of Canada and continue to be of commercial, environmental and aesthetic importance to all Canadians. Maples contribute valuable wood products, keep the maple sugar (3) alive and have to beautify the landscape.

Since 1965 the maple leaf (4) the most important feature of the National Flag of Canada and the Maple tree with the leaves has become the most well-known Canadian (5) and nationally and internationally. Maple leaf pins and badges are proudly (6) by Canadians abroad, and are recognised around the world. (7) the maple leaf is closely associated

with Canada, the map tree was never officially recognize.....(8)
Canada's emblem until 1966.

1. A. taken	B. given	C. done	D. played
2. A. history	B. historical	C. historic	D. historian
3. A. industry	B. industries	C. industrial	D. industrially
4. A. was	B. have been	C. has been	D. is
5. A. sign	B. symbol	C. tree	D. leaf
6. A. wear	B. wore	C. worn	D. to be worn
7. A. Because	B. So	C. But	D. Although
8. A. of	B. with	C. as	D. for

VIII. Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F)

The Kiwi

The kiwi lives only in New Zealand. It is a very strange bird because it cannot fly. The kiwi is the same size as a chicken. It has no wings or tail. It does not have any feathers like other birds.

A kiwi likes a lot of trees around it. It sleeps during the day because the sunlight hurts its eyes. It can smell things with its nose. It is the only bird in the world that can smell things. The kiwi's eggs are very big.

There are only a few kiwis in New Zealand now. New Zealanders want their kiwis to live. There is a picture of a kiwi on New Zealand money. People from New Zealand are sometimes call kiwis.

	T	F
1. Kiwis live in Australia and New Zealand.	☐	☐
2. A kiwi has a tail but no wings.	☐	☐
3. It sleeps during the day because light hurts its eyes.	☐	☐
4. People in New Zealand do not want on the kiwis to die.	☐	☐

5. The kiwi is a strange New Zealand bird.

☐☐

IX. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answer the questions about the passage.

The Hopi of Arizona

The Hopi live in the northwestern part of Arizona in the United States. With modern things all around them, the Hopi keep their traditions.

There are about 10,000 Hopi and they live in twelve villages in the desert. The weather is very hot in summer, but in winter it freezes. The wind blows hard. Farming is difficult. Corn is the Hopi's main food, but they plant vegetables, too. They raise sheep, goats, and cattle. They also eat hamburgers, ice cream and drink soft drinks. They live in traditional stone houses, but many of them have the telephones, radios, and television. They have horses, but they have trucks too.

Kachinas are an important part of the Hopi religion. Kachinas are spirits of dead people, of rocks, plants, and animals, and of the stars. Men dress as kachinas and do religious dances. People also some make wooden kachinas. No two wooden kachinas are ever alike.

The children attend school, and they also learn the Hopi language, dances, and stories.

The Hopi want a comfortable, modern life, but they don't want to lose their traditions.

1. The hopi

- A. want modern things instead of traditional ones
- B. want traditional things instead of modern ones
- C. don't want to remember their traditions
- D. want both modern and condition things

2. Winters in this part of Arizona are

- A. hot B. warm C. cool D. cold

3. The main Hopi food is

- A. corn B. hamburgers C. beef D. vegetables

4. Kachinas are

- A. men B. something to eat C. animals D. spirits

5. The Hopi don't want to..... their traditions.

A. lose B. hit C. remember D. learn

6. The main idea of the passage is

- A. the Hopi raise crops and animals in the Arizona desert.
- B. kachinas are spirits of the things around the Hopi.
- C. the Hopi keep their traditions even with modern life all around them
- D. the Hopi want a comfortable, modern life

X. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

- 1. enormous/ The/ USA/ than/ is/ an/ European/ country/ more/ times/ the /size/ two/ of/ the/ Union/. /,
- 2. The/ land/ USA/ is/ a/ the/ hottest/ and/ of/ both/ extreme/ It/ is/ one/ of/ places/ in/ coldest/ the/ world/. / .
- 3. on/ About/ population/ half/ of/ the/ events/ Australia/ Australia's/ fantastic/ go/ to/ one/ of /Day/.
- 4. half / The/ other/ of/ Australia's/ celebrate/ home/ on/ the/ the/ Australian/ population/ Day/ at/ beach/ their/ family / or/ with/ and/ friends/ .
- 5. and/ they/ the/ Year / barbecues/ Award/ watch/ the/ Australian/ of/ They/ have/ on/ television/.

XI. Use the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2 - 5 words in total.)

Example: My house has a small garden.

is There.....my house

Answer: is a small garden in

1. We have never been to Alaska before.

ever It's the first time we.....to Alaska.

2. Tom plans to open another restaurant in Manchester next month.

is Tom isrestaurant in Manchester next month.

3. The last time Phong visited Tasmania was five years ago.

visited Phong five years.

4. The early train is scheduled to arrive in London at 10 o'clock.

arrives The early train..... at 10 o'clock.

5. It is the most beautiful waterfall I have ever seen.

such Ibeautiful waterfall.

XII. Use the following information to write a passage of 100 - 120 words about Canada.

- Location: Northern part of north America
- Second largest country in the world
- 10 provinces, three territories
- Area: 9,984,670km²; population: 35 million people
- Language: English, French
- One of the richest countries; among highest living standard countries
- Capital city: Ottawa; biggest town: Toronto
- National sport: Ice-hockey; many beautiful landmarks

Geography: longest river: Mckenzie; tallest mountain: Mount Logan; largest lake: Bear Lake

[illegible]

.....

.....

.....

TEST

I. Circle the word marked A, B, C, or D with a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. accent	B. legend	C. icon	D. parade
2. A. schedule	B. unique	C. puzzle	D. awesome
3. A. absolutely	B. temperature	C. contamination	D. atmosphere
4. A. kangaroo	B. underground	C. radioactive	D. Aboriginal
5. A. definition	B. improvement	C. population	D. celebration

II. Mark the stress in the underlined words.

1. I can't speak Japanese but I love this country.
2. My uncle is a famous referee. He is very severe with players.
3. I have just bought a new laptop. It has a three-year guarantee.
4. There are oval 20 applicants for the job but he is the interviewee for this position.
5. All Vietnamese people love peace because they have undergone many aggressive wars.

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. I like going to England to study English because I can practice English with speakers. (non-native)
2. English is anlanguage in this country. (officially)
3. People in the south of my country speak the language with accent. (differ)
4. Last summer holiday, my family went to Da Nang and Hoi An. We had a time there. (wonder)
5. Why has she improved her English a lot? - Ah, she's just come back from an English country. (speak)

IV. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. Singapore is famous for its.....and green trees.

- A. cleanliness B. cleanly C. cleaning D. clean

2. On Christmas Eve, most big cities, especially London are with colored lights across the streets and enormous Christmas trees.

- A. decorated B. hang C. put D. made

3. In the United States there are 50 and six different time zones across the country

- A. states B. nations C. towns D. countries

4. I once tried to apple pie when I was in London. It was really delicious.

- A. do B. cook C. make D. show

5. You should go to Canada in summer because it is the most popular time for visitors to Niagara Falls and see the beautiful sights there.

- A. stay B. look C. tour D. visit

6. Nowadays you still see the men where kilts (skirts) to wedding or other formal occasions.

- A. Scottish B. Scotland C. Scots D. Scot

7. The USA has a population of about 304 million, and it is the third country in the world.

- A. smallest B. largest C. narrowest D. highest

8. In some English speaking countries, turkey and pudding are..... food at Christmas.

- A. national B. historical C. traditional D. possible

9. New Zealand lovers of nature and fans of dangerous sports.

- A. attracts B. keeps C. calls D. asks

10. Queenstown in New Zealand has got beautiful and a dry climate, so it's ideal for outdoor activities.

- A. look B. viewing C. atmosphere D. scenery

V. Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

The Maori of New Zealand

The Maori arrived in New Zealand from other Polynesian islands over a thousand years ago. They were the first people to live there. They made beautiful wooden buildings with pictures into the wood. There are about 280,000 Maori today. Maori have brown skin, dark brown eyes, and wavy black hair.

In 1840, they agreed to become a British colony, and they learned European ways quickly. Today there are Maori in all kinds of jobs. They attend schools and universities and become lawyers and scientists. There are Maori in the government. Most of them live like the white New Zealanders.

However, the Maori do not forget their traditions. Children learn the language, music, and old stories. They have yearly competitions in speaking, dancing, and singing. The Maori live a comfortable, modern life but keep their traditions by passing them to their children.

Task 1: Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

	T	F
1. The Maori are Polynesians.	☐	☐
2. New Zealand is an island country.	☐	☐
3. The Maori look like the Chinese.	☐	☐
4. The Maori live only by hunting and fishing.	☐	☐
5. The Maori like music.	☐	☐

Task 2: Read the passages again, and write short answers to the questions.

1. Where did the Maori come from?
2. How many Maori are there?
3. What do the Maori look like?
4. How do most Maori we live today?

5. What do they do at their yearly competitions?

VI. Rewrite the following sentences so that their meaning stays the same, using the words given.

1. I have one new American friend. On the first days, I didn't understand what he asked me but is OK now. (found)
2. Have you made any friends from English speaking countries? (acquaintance)
3. Australians use English as their mother tongue so they are native speakers. (because)
4. Can you name the countries that speak English as their official language? (What)
5. New Zealand and Australia both have coasts around their countries. (surrounded)

KEYS TO EXERCISES_UNIT 8

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES, GRAMMAR AND PRONUNCIATION

I. New words:

Aborigines (n)	/ˌæbəˈrɪdʒənɪz/	thổ dân châu Úc	offi cial (adj)	/əˈfiʃl/	chính thông/ chính thức
absolutely (adv)	/ˈæbsəlu:tli /	tuyệt đối, chắc chắn	parade (n)	/pəˈreɪd/	cuộc diễu hành
accent (n)	/ˈæksent/	giọng điệu	puzzle (n)	/ˈpʌzl/	trò chơi đồ
cattle station (n)	/ˈkætl ˈsteɪʃn/	trại gia súc	schedule (n)	/ˈʃedju:l/	lịch trình, thời gian biểu
ghost (n)	/ɡəʊst/	ma	Scots/ Scottish (n)	/skɒts/ ˈskɒtɪʃ/	người Scotland
haunt (v)	/həʊnt/	ám ảnh, ma ám	state (n)	/steɪt/	bang
icon (n)	/ˈaɪkɒn/	biểu tượng	unique (adj)	/juˈni:k/	độc đáo, riêng biệt

kangaroo (n)	/ˌkæŋɡəˈruː/	chuột túi	accept (v)	/əkˈsept/	chấp nhận, nhận
koala (n)	/kəʊˈɑːlə/	gấu túi	social (adj)	/ˈsəʊʃl/	thuộc về xã hội
kilt (n)	/kɪlt/	váy ca-rô của đàn ông Scotland	anniversary (n)	/ˌæniˈvɜːsəri/	ngày kỉ niệm
legend (n)	/ˈledʒənd/	huyền thoại	ceremony (n)	/ˈserəməni/	nghĩ lễ
loch (n)	/lɒk/	hồ (phương ngữ ở Scotland)	commemorate (v)	/kəˈmeməreɪt/	kỉ niệm
awesome (adj)	/ˈɔːsəm/	tuyệt vời			

II. Grammar:

- Present tenses: review
- Present simple for future:

We use the present simple with a future meaning when we talk about schedules, programmes, etc. (for example, public transport, cinemas, television, schools ...)

Example:

1. The train to Bristol leaves at 11.15 from platform four.
2. Our school year starts next week, on September 5th.

III. Pronunciation:

B. EXERCISES

I. Write the words from the box in the correct part of the table, according to the stress pattern.

Oo	coffee, Maltese
oO	trainee, trustee, payee, Burmese, Chinese, Viennese
Ooo	julibee
oOo	committee
ooO	absentee, devotee, nominee, referee, expellee, addressee, guarantee, divorcee, Sudanese, Lebanese, Nepalese, Congolese, Japanese, Vietnamese, Togolese, Annamese
oooO	examine, interviewee, Senegalese

II. Fill in each blank in the following passage with ONE word.

English is theofficial..... (1) language of the Philippines. English-medium educationbegan/ started..... (2) in the Philippines in 1901 after the arrival of some 540 US teachers. English was also chosen for newspapers and magazines, the media, and literary writing.

The latest results from a recent survey suggest that about 65% of thepopulation..... (3) of the Philippines has theability..... (4) to understand spoken andwritten..... (5) English with 48 person stating that they can write standard English.

The economy is based on English, and successful workers and managers are fluentin..... (6) English. ...Therefore..... (7), many schools know that theirstudents (8) must be fluent in English to be successful.

III. Complete the sentences with the appropriate present tenses of the verbs in brackets.

1. Canadaismade up of 10 provinces and three territories. (be)
2. Australiahas..... a range of different landscapes, including urban areas mountain ranges, desserts and rain forests. (have)
3. Annually, the National Eisteddfod festival of Walestakes..... place for eight days at the start of August. (take)

4. The Statue of Liberty ...has welcomed..... over 12 million immigrants entering the USA through New York Harbor since 1900. (welcome)
5. Each of the 50 stateshas adopted..... an official state flower so far. (adopt)
6. Since 1965, the maple tree with the leaveshas become..... the most well-known Canadian symbol. (become)
7. At present, the National Cherry Blossom Festivalis occurring..... in Washington, D.C. to see celebrate spring's arrival. (occur)
8. Maorihas been..... recognized as an official language of New Zealand since the Maoris Language Act of 1987. (be)

IV. Complete the sentences with the words in the box.

<i>accent</i>	<i>brigade</i>	<i>cattle</i>	<i>fence</i>	<i>football</i>
<i>igloo</i>	<i>loch</i>	<i>monument</i>	<i>native</i>	<i>symbol</i>

1. The silver fern is a nationalSYMBOL.....of New Zealand.
2. Mount Rushmore is a nationalMONUMENT..... carved into a mountain in South Dakota, USA.
3. Trung speaks English like aNATIVE..... though he comes from Vietnam.
4. I sometimes thought John'sACCENT..... sounded English, sometimes American.
5. In Scotland, the word "LOCH....." is used to describe any large, enclosed expanse of water.
6. It took six years to build the rabbit-proofFENCEin Australia.
7. England is the original home ofFOOTBALL..... because the sport was invented there.
8. Edinburgh, Scotland was the first city in the world to have his own fire ...BRIGADE..... n 1824.
9. Anna Creek Station in South Australia is the world's largestCATTLE..... station with an area of 24,000 km².

10. AnIGLOO..... is a type of shelter built of snow by the Inuit, the Aboriginal peoples in Canada.

V. Give the correct form of the words given to complete to the sentences.

1	Both French and English are ...OFFICIAL.. languages in Canada.	OFFICE
2	NSW is the ... ABBREVIATION of New South Wales, the most popular state in Australia.	ABBREVIATE
3	The gold Coast is famous for its mostICONIC..... theme parks in Australia such as Dreamworld and WhiteWater World.	ICON
4	Do you know that the telephone, the television and penicillin are Scottish..... ? inventions	INVENT
5	Visitors can spendENDLESS..... days exploring amazing natural beauty of New Zealand.	END
6	There are different kinds ofENTERTAINMENT.... provided throughout Disneyland.	ENTERTAIN
7	Scotland is aLEGENDARY..... land and this is noted for its rich and interesting history.	LEGEND
8	We'll take the early..... flight from Sydney to Wellington.	FLY
9	Niagara Falls, on the border of the USA and Canada, is one of the most ..SPECTACULAR... scenery in the world.	SPECTACLE
10	There are many tourist attractions in London such as British Museum, London Eye and Tower of London.	ATTRACT

VI. Fill each blank with a correct word to finish the passages.

Australia is the 6th biggest country in the world. Only Russia, China, Canada ,USA and Brazil areBIGGER.....(1). It is the world's largest island.

Even though the country is so big, it only has about 23 million inhabitants. 88% of all AustraliansLIVE.....(2) in the big cities or smaller towns which makes big areas of the country empty.

Australia lies in theSOUTHERN.....(3) hemisphere which means that the more south you go, the cooler it gets. In the north parts of the country, it is always hot. TheREST.....(4) of the country has really hot summers and mild winters. Snow only falls in the Australian Alps and in Tasmania. When we haveWINTER.....(5) in Europe and Asia, the Australians have summer. So they celebrate Christmas in theMIDDLE.....(6) of the summer.

Australia is famous for its wildlife. The most famousANIMAL.....(7) is probably the kangaroo. The kangaroo, or roo for short, hasBECOME.....(8) Australia's national symbol. The word "kangaroo" was the first AboriginalWORD.....(9) in the English language. There are several species of kangaroos. The red kangarooARE.....(10) the biggest ones and they are found in the middle of the country.

VII. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C, or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Maple Tree

Trees have (1) a meaningful role in the(2) development of Canada and continue to be of commercial, environmental and aesthetic importance to all Canadians. Maples contribute valuable wood products, keep the maple sugar(3) alive and have to beautify the landscape.

Since 1965 the maple leaf (4) the most important feature of the National Flag of Canada and the Maple tree with the leaves has become the most well-known Canadian (5) and nationally and internationally. Maple leaf pins and badges are proudly (6) by Canadians abroad, and are recognised around the world. (7) the maple leaf is closely associated

with Canada, the map tree was never officially recognize.....(8)
Canada's emblem until 1966.

1. A. taken	B. given	C. done	D. played
2. A. history	B. historical	C. historic	D. historian
3. A. industry	B. industries	C. industrial	D. industrially
4. A. was	B. have been	C. has been	D. is
5. A. sign	B. symbol	C. tree	D. leaf
6. A. wear	B. wore	C. worn	D. to be worn
7. A. Because	B. So	C. But	D. Although
8. A. of	B. with	C. as	D. for

VIII. Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F)

The Kiwi

The kiwi lives only in New Zealand. It is a very strange bird because it cannot fly. The kiwi is the same size as a chicken. It has no wings or tail. It does not have any feathers like other birds.

A kiwi likes a lot of trees around it. It sleeps during the day because the sunlight hurts its eyes. It can smell things with its nose. It is the only bird in the world that can smell things. The kiwi's eggs are very big.

There are only a few kiwis in New Zealand now. New Zealanders want their kiwis to live. There is a picture of a kiwi on New Zealand money. People from New Zealand are sometimes call kiwis.

	T	F
1. Kiwis live in Australia and New Zealand.	☐	☐
2. A kiwi has a tail but no wings.	☐	☐
3. It sleeps during the day because light hurts its eyes.	☐	☐
4. People in New Zealand do not want on the kiwis to die.	☐	☐

5. The kiwi is a strange New Zealand bird.

☐☐

1 F

2 F

3 T

4 T

5 T

IX. Choose the item among A, B, C or D that best answer the questions about the passage.

The Hopi of Arizona

The Hopi live in the northwestern part of Arizona in the United States. With modern things all around them, the Hopi keep their traditions.

There are about 10,000 Hopi and they live in twelve villages in the desert. The weather is very hot in summer, but in winter it freezes. The wind blows hard. Farming is difficult. Corn is the Hopi's main food, but they plant vegetables, too. They raise sheep, goats, and cattle. They also eat hamburgers, ice cream and drink soft drinks. They live in traditional stone houses, but many of them have the telephones, radios, and television. They have horses, but they have trucks too.

Kachinas are an important part of the Hopi religion. Kachinas are spirits of dead people, of rocks, plants, and animals, and of the stars. Men dress as kachinas and do religious dances. People also some make wooden kachinas. No two wooden kachinas are ever alike.

The children attend school, and they also learn the Hopi language, dances, and stories.

The Hopi want a comfortable, modern life, but they don't want to lose their traditions.

1. The hopi

A. want modern things instead of traditional ones

B. want traditional things instead of modern ones

C. don't want to remember their traditions

D. want both modern and condition things

2. Winters in this part of Arizona are

A. hot

B. warm

C. cool

D. cold

3. The main Hopi food is

A. corn

B. hamburgers

C. beef

D. vegetables

4. Kachinas are

A. men B. something to eat C. animals **D. spirits**

5. The Hopi don't want to..... their traditions.

A. lose B. hit C. remember D. learn

6. The main idea of the passage is

A. the Hopi raise crops and animals in the Arizona desert.

B. kachinas are spirits of the things around the Hopi.

C. the Hopi keep their traditions even with modern life all around them

D. the Hopi want a comfortable, modern life

X. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. The USA is an enormous country, more than two times the size of the European Union.

2. The USA is a land of extreme. It is both one of the hottest and coldest places in the world.

3. About half of Australia's population go to one of the fantastic events on Australia Day.

4. The other half of Australia's population celebrate the Australian Day at home or on the beach with their family and friends.

5. They have barbecues and they watch the *Australian of the Year Award* on television.

XI. Use the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2 - 5 words in total.)

1. We have never been to Alaska before.

ever It's the first time we have ever been to Alaska.

2. Tom plans to open another restaurant in Manchester next month.

is Tom is going to open/ is opening another restaurant in Manchester next month.

3. The last time Phong visited Tasmania was five years ago.

visited Phong hasn't visited Tasmania for five years.

4. The early train is scheduled to arrive in London at 10 o'clock.

arrives The early train arrives in London at 10 o'clock.

5. It is the most beautiful waterfall I have ever seen.

such I have never seen such a beautiful waterfall.

XII. Use the following information to write a passage of 100 - 120 words about Canada.

Canada is the country in the northern part of North America. By area, Canada is the second largest country in the world. Canada consists of 10 provinces and three territories. Although Canada is really big with an area of 9,984,670 km², it has a population of 35 million people. In Canada two languages are spoken: English and French. Canada is one of the richest country and among the countries that have the highest living standard. The capital city is Ottawa, but the biggest town is Toronto. The national sport is Ice-hockey, and there are many beautiful landmarks. In terms of geography, the longest river is Mckenzie, the tallest mountain is Mount Logan and the largest lake is Bear Lake. So, come to Canada and you will have fun.

TEST

I. Circle the word marked A, B, C, or D with a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. accent	B. legend	C. icon	D. parade
2. A. schedule	B. unique	C. puzzle	D. awesome
3. A. absolutely	B. temperature	C. contamination	D. atmosphere
4. A. kangaroo	B. underground	C. radioactive	D. Aboriginal
5. A. definition	B. improvement	C. population	D. celebration

II. Mark the stress in the underlined words.

1. I can't speak Japanese but I love this country.

2. My uncle is a famous referee. He is very severe with players.

3. I have just bought a new laptop. It has a three-year guarantee.
4. There are oval 20 applicants for the job but he is the interviewee for this position.
5. All Vietnamese people love peace because they have undergone many aggressive wars.

III. Put the words in brackets into the right forms to complete the sentences.

1. I like going to England to study English because I can practice English with speakers. (non-native) NATIVE
2. English is anlanguage in this country. (officially) OFFICIAL
3. People in the south of my country speak the language with..... accent. (differ) DIFFERENT
4. Last summer holiday, my family went to Da Nang and Hoi An. We had a time there. (wonder) WONDERFUL
5. Why has she improved her English a lot? - Ah, she's just come back from an English country. (speak) SPEAKING

IV. Choose the correct option A, B, C, or D to complete the sentences.

1. Singapore is famous for its.....and green trees.
A. cleanliness B. cleanly C. cleaning D. clean
2. On Christmas Eve, most big cities, especially London are with colored lights across the streets and enormous Christmas trees.
A. decorated B. hang C. put D. made
3. In the United States there are 50 and six different time zones across the country
A. states B. nations C. towns D. countries
4. I once tried to apple pie when I was in London. It was really delicious.
A. do B. cook **C. make** D. show
5. You should go to Canada in summer because it is the most popular time for visitors to Niagara Falls and see the beautiful sights there.
A. stay B. look C. tour **D. visit**

6. Nowadays you still see the men where kilts (skirts) to wedding or other formal occasions.

- A. **Scottish** B. Scotland C. Scots D. Scot

7. The USA has a population of about 304 million, and it is the third country in the world.

- A. smallest B. **largest** C. narrowest D. highest

8. In some English speaking countries, turkey and pudding are..... food at Christmas.

- A. national B. historical C. **traditional** D. possible

9. New Zealand lovers of nature and fans of dangerous sports.

- A. **attracts** B. keeps C. calls D. asks

10. Queenstown in New Zealand has got beautiful and a dry climate, so it's ideal for outdoor activities.

- A. look B. viewing C. atmosphere D. **scenery**

V. Read the passage and do the tasks that follow.

The Maori of New Zealand

The Maori arrived in New Zealand from other Polynesian islands over a thousand years ago. They were the first people to live there. They made beautiful wooden buildings with pictures into the wood. There are about 280,000 Maori today. Maori have brown skin, dark brown eyes, and wavy black hair.

In 1840, they agreed to become a British colony, and they learned European ways quickly. Today there are Maori in all kinds of jobs. They attend schools and universities and become lawyers and scientists. There are Maori in the government. Most of them live like the white New Zealanders.

However, the Maori do not forget their traditions. Children learn the language, music, and old stories. They have yearly competitions in speaking, dancing, and singing. The Maori live a comfortable, modern life but keep their traditions by passing them to their children.

Task 1: Read the passage and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F).

	T	F
1. The Maori are Polynesians.	☐	☐
2. New Zealand is an island country.	☐	☐
3. The Maori look like the Chinese.	☐	☐
4. The Maori live only by hunting and fishing.	☐	☐
5. The Maori like music.	☐	☐
1 T 2T 3F 4F 5T		

Task 2: Read the passages again, and write short answers to the questions.

6. Where did the Maori come from?
7. How many Maori are there?
8. What do the Maori look like?
9. How do most Maori we live today?
10. What do they do at their yearly competitions?

6. from other Polynesian islands
7. 280,000
8. They have brown skin, dark brown eyes, and wavy black hair.
9. They live a comfortable, modern life.
10. They speak, dance, and sing.

VI. Rewrite the following sentences so that their meaning stays the same, using the words given.

1. I have one new American friend. On the first days, I didn't understand what he asked me but is OK now. (found)
2. Have you made any friends from English speaking countries? (acquaintance)

3. Australians use English as their mother tongue so they are native speakers. (because)
4. Can you name the countries that speak English as their official language? (What)
5. New Zealand and Australia both have coasts around their countries. (surrounded)

1. *I find it difficult to understand what my new American friend asked me on the first days but is OK now.*
2. *Have you made the acquaintance of any people from English speaking countries?*
3. *Australians are native speakers because they use English as their mother tongue.*
4. *What countries speak English as their official language?*
5. *New Zealand and Australia are both surrounded by the sea.*

NATURAL DISASTERS (UNIT 9)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Accommodation</i>	/əˌkɒməˈdeɪʃ(ə)n/	Chỗ ở	<i>Put out</i>	/pʊt/ /aʊt/	Dập tắt (lửa)
<i>Bury</i>	/ˈberi/	Chôn vùi, vùi lấp	<i>Rage</i>	/reɪdʒ/	Diễn ra ác liệt, hung dữ
<i>Collapse</i>	/kəˈlæps/	Đổ sập, sụp	<i>Rescue worker</i>	/ˈreskjuː/ /ˈwɜːkə/	Nhân viên cứu hộ
<i>Damage</i>	/ˈdæmɪdʒ/	Sự thiệt hại, sự hư hại	<i>Scatter</i>	/ˈskætə/	Tung, rải, rác
<i>Disaster</i>	/dɪˈzɑːstə/	Tai họa, thảm họa	<i>Shake</i>	/ʃeɪk/	Rung, lắc, làm rung, lúc lắc
<i>Drought</i>	/draʊt/	Hạn hán	<i>Tornado</i>	/tɔːˈneɪdəʊ/	Lốc xoáy
<i>Earthquake</i>	/ˈɜːθkweɪk/	Trận động đất	<i>Trap</i>	/træp/	Làm cho mắc kẹt
<i>Erupt</i>	/ɪˈrʌpt/	Phun (núi lửa)	<i>tsunami</i>	/tsuːˈnɑːmi/	Sóng thần
<i>Eruption</i>	/ɪˈrʌpʃən/	Sự phun (núi lửa)	<i>Typhoon</i>	/taɪˈfuːn/	Bão nhiệt đới
<i>evacuate</i>	/ɪˈvækjueɪt/	Sơ tán	<i>victim</i>	/ˈvɪktɪm/	Nạn nhân
<i>Forest fire</i>	/ˈfɒrɪst/ /ˈfaɪə/	Cháy rừng	<i>Volcanic</i>	/vɒlˈkæɪnɪk/	Thuộc núi lửa
<i>Homeless</i>	/ˈhəʊmlɪs/	Không có nhà cửa, vô gia cư	<i>Volcano</i>	/vɒlˈkeɪnəʊ/	Núi lửa

<i>Mudslide</i>	<i>/ˈmʌdslaɪd/</i>	Lũ bũn			
-----------------	--------------------	--------	--	--	--

II. Grammar:

- + Review: passive voice
- + Past perfect

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. A. industry | B. tornado | C. natural | D. injury |
| 2. A. geography | B. electronic | C. scientific | D. preparation |
| 3. A. debris | B. rainstorm | C. destroy | D. shelter |
| 4. A. primary | B. animal | C. tropical | D. volcano |
| 5. A. climatology | B. bibliography | C. communication | D. radiography |

II. Complete the sentences with the words in the box

Avalanche	blizzard	disaster	drought	eruption
evacuation	explosion	flood	lightning	tsunami

1. The soldiers have been deployed to help avert a looming environmental _____ in central provinces.
2. When I was outside in the _____, I couldn't see more than a few feet in front of me because of the snow.
3. Mum went shopping yesterday afternoon and she was very frightened. In the car park, there was an _____ and nobody knew what it was.
4. I saw on TV that yesterday there was an _____ on an island in the Pacific and hot lava came down the volcano.
5. My little sister is afraid of _____, so when there is a bad storm she always hides.
6. Last Sunday we wanted to go skiing, but we couldn't because in the mountains there was an _____.
7. Powerful earthquake off the coast in Indonesia sparked a three-metre-high _____ that killed at least 113 people.
8. If there is a bad _____ in a town, the people have to travel by boat!

9. After the harshest winter in decades, the western region is now facing its hottest summer and the worst_____across the area in nearly 40 years.
10. People should become familiar with the guidelines for_____ because natural disasters can force them to leave their homes.

III. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets to complete the sentences.

1. All people (go)_____down in the cellar for protection by the time the tornado (sweep)_____ through the town yesterday.
2. Hundred of trees on streets in Ha Noi (fall)_____in a sudden storm last night.
3. I (not seen)_____a more horrible flood than this since I (live) _____ in this area.
4. The tourists (camp)_____near a peaceful river, when all of a sudden, the river (flood)_____its banks and almost (destroy)_____their campsite.
5. When the volcano (erupt)_____, people living nearby already (move) _____to safe places.

IV. Rewrite the following sentences in passive voice.

1. The mudslide buried five houses in a village in the eastern region.

2. The volunteers have rescued three cats.

3. They are cutting dead trees on some streets to prepare for the forthcoming storm.

4. We should move the furniture to higher places because of the flood.

5. They had repaired their house before the typhoon came.

6. What kind of injuries do earthquakes cause?

7. The government didn't warn the people about the possibility of a tsunami.

8. Have the workers restored the damaged bridge yet?

9. I hadn't put the car into the garage before the hail occurred.

10. We will send rescue workers to the flooded villages.

V. Choose the correct option for each gap to finish the passage

A tsunami is a chain of fast moving waves in the ocean caused by powerful [earthquakes](#) or volcanic eruptions. Tsunami has a very long wave. It can be hundreds of kilometers (1)_____. Usually, tsunami starts suddenly. The waves travel (2)_____ a great speed across an ocean with little energy loss. They can remove sand from beaches, destroy trees, toss and drag vehicles, [damage](#) houses and even destroy whole towns.

The [water](#) will draw back from the [coast](#) half of the wave period prior to the wave getting to the [coast](#). If the slope of the coast is not deep, the water may (3)_____ for hundreds of metres. People who do not know of the danger will often remain at the shore.

Tsunamis cannot (4)_____. However, there are ways to help stop people from [dying](#) from a tsunami. Some (5)_____ with lots of tsunamis may use warning systems which may warn the population before the big waves reach the land. Because an [earthquake](#) that caused the tsunami can be felt before the wave gets to the shore, people can be warned to go somewhere safe.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. long | B. far | C. wide | D. large |
| 2. A. from | B. of | C. at | D. in |
| 3. A. move away | B. go along | C. spread out | D. pull back |
| 4. A. prevent | B. go along | C. spread out | D. be prevented |
| 5. A. countries | B. regions | C. states | D. districts |

VI. Read the following passage about tornadoes and choose the best answer for each question.

Tornadoes

Did you ever see the movie The Wizard of Oz? A tornado sweeps up Dorothy and Toto, sending them to a new world where there are witches and talking lions! That entire story is fiction, but tornadoes are real and they are serious business. In fact, they can be the most dangerous storms of all.

Tornadoes are sometimes referred to as twisters or cyclones. They are shaped like a cylinder. They are born in thunderclouds. The winds inside a tornado swirl around and around and can be

more than 300 miles per hour (mph). The winds are so strong that tornadoes can lift animals, cars and even horses.

The United States has more tornadoes than any other country in the world. State such as Texas, Oklahoma, Kansas, and Nebraska are hit hard by tornadoes. This part of the country is known as “Tornado Alley”. Tornado season is during the springtime and summer. If the conditions are right, a tornado can happen any time of year.

1. Where do tornadoes begin?

- A. in the ocean B. underground C. in cyclones D. in thunderclouds

2. Why does the author mention The Wizard of Oz at the beginning of the passage?

- A. to give a famous example of a tornado B. to give a history of tornadoes
C. to show that hurricanes are not real D. to explain why tornadoes are dangerous

3. Based on the passage, people who live in Tornado Alley should_____

- A. expect tornadoes only during the summer.
B. be very familiar with the movie The Wizard of Oz.
C. be prepared for the dangers of tornadoes.
D. think about moving to the United States.

4. The word conditions in the last paragraph means_____.

- A. preparation B. dangerous hazards C. the way things are D. lucky feelings

5. What is the main idea of this passage?

- A. Some states get tornadoes more than other states.
B. Tornadoes are dangerous storms that affect the U,S.
C. Tornadoes are different from how they are in movies.
D. Many tornadoes do not cause a lot of damage.

VII. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1. Hundreds of houses destroyed after a tornado hit the small town of Texas.

- A B C D

2. Many people got injured in the storm because they weren't prepared for the disaster.

- A B C D

3. It is reported that six people trapped in collapsed buildings have freed so far.

- A B C D

4. The earthquake occurred at midday when many people had had lunch.

A B C D

5. Do you know that the word “tsunami” takes from the Japanese for “harbor wave”

A B C D

VIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

1. Powerful tsunami waves carried ships many kilometers inland.

Ships _____

2. Many natural disasters have been caused by global warming.

Global warming _____

3. They provided food then cleared up the debris.

After they _____

4. Tornadoes can move objects as big as a car.

Objects _____

5. The northern part of the city wasn't struck by the typhoon.

The typhoon _____

IX. Use the information below to write a news reports of 100-120 words about a natural disaster.

Type of natural disaster	Earthquake
What is this disaster?	Most powerful earthquake in Nepal since 1934, 7.8 on Richter scale.
When and where did the disaster occur	- On April 25 th , 2015, at 11.56 NST - In central Nepal - Also affect India, Bangladesh, Tibet, China
What are the effects of disaster?	- More than 8,8000 people die - Over 23,000 injured people - Hundreds of thousands of people homeless, entire villages flattened - Kathmadu Durbar Square, UNESCO World Heritage Site, destroyed - Caused an avalanche on Mount Everest, killed at least 19 people
What has been done to help the victims of the disaster?	- 90% of soldiers in Nepalese Army sent to stricken areas - Many countries, international organizations sent medical experts, emergency workers, rescue staff, money; provided medical supplies, food, equipment

KEY TO NATURAL DISASTERS (UNIT 9)

I. Choose the word having the underlined part pronounced differently in each line.

- | | | | |
|-------------------|-----------------|------------------|----------------|
| 1. A. industry | B. tornado | C. natural | D. injury |
| 2. A. geography | B. electronic | C. scientific | D. preparation |
| 3. A. debris | B. rainstorm | C. destroy | D. shelter |
| 4. A. primary | B. animal | C. tropical | D. volcano |
| 5. A. climatology | B. bibliography | C. communication | D. radiography |

II. Complete the sentences with the words in the box

Avalanche	blizzard	disaster	drought	eruption
evacuation	explosion	flood	lightning	tsunami

1. The soldiers have been deployed to help avert a looming environmental _____ **disaster** _____ in central provinces.
2. When I was outside in the _____ **blizzard** _____, I couldn't see more than a few feet in front of me because of the snow.
3. Mum went shopping yesterday afternoon and she was very frightened. In the car park, there was an _____ **explosion** _____ and nobody knew what it was.
4. I saw on TV that yesterday there was an _____ **eruption** _____ on an island in the Pacific and hot lava came down the volcano.
5. My little sister is afraid of _____ **lightning** _____, so when there is a bad storm she always hides.
6. Last Sunday we wanted to go skiing, but we couldn't because in the mountains there was an _____ **Avalanche** _____.
7. Powerful earthquake off the coast in Indonesia sparked a three-metre-high _____ **tsunami** _____ that killed at least 113 people.
8. If there is a bad _____ **flood** _____ in a town, the people have to travel by boat!
9. After the harshest winter in decades, the western region is now facing its hottest summer and the worst _____ **drought** _____ across the area in nearly 40 years.
10. People should become familiar with the guidelines for _____ **evacuation** _____ because natural disasters can force them to leave their homes.

III. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets to complete the sentences.

1. All people (go) _____ had gone _____ down in the cellar for protection by the time the tornado (sweep) _____ swept _____ through the town yesterday.

2. Hundred of trees on streets in Ha Noi (fall)_____fell_____in a sudden storm last night.
3. I (not seen)_____haven't seen_____a more horrible flood than this since I (live) _____lived_____in this area.
4. The tourists (camp)_____were camping_____near a peaceful river, when all of a sudden, the river (flood)_____flooded_____its banks and almost (destroy) _____destroyed_____their campsite.
5. When the volcano (erupt)_____erupted_____, people living nearby already (move) _____had already moved_____to safe places.

IV. Rewrite the following sentences in passive voice.

1. The mudslide buried five houses in a village in the eastern region.

Five houses in a village in the eastern region were buried by the mudslide.

2. The volunteers have rescued three cats.

Three cats have been rescued by the volunteers.

3. They are cutting dead trees on some streets to prepare for the forthcoming storm.

Dead trees on some streets are being cut to prepare for the forthcoming storm.

4. We should move the furniture to higher places because of the flood.

The furniture should be moved to higher places because of the flood.

5. They had repaired their house before the typhoon came.

Their house had been repaired before the typhoon came.

6. What kind of injuries do earthquakes cause?

What kind of injuries are caused by earthquakes?

7. The government didn't warn the people about the possibility of a tsunami.

The people weren't warned about the possibility of a tsunami by the government.

8. Have the workers restored the damaged bridge yet?

Has the damaged bridge been restored by the workers yet?

9. I hadn't put the car into the garage before the hail occurred.

The car hadn't been put into the garage (by me) before the hail occurred.

10. We will send rescue workers to the flooded villages.

Rescue workers will be sent to flooded villages.

V. Choose the correct option for each gap to finish the passage

A tsunami is a chain of fast moving waves in the ocean caused by powerful [earthquakes](#) or volcanic eruptions. Tsunami has a very long wave. It can be hundreds of kilometers (1)_____. Usually, tsunami starts suddenly. The waves travel (2)_____ a great speed across an ocean with little energy loss. They can remove sand from beaches, destroy trees, toss and drag vehicles, [damage](#) houses and even destroy whole towns.

The [water](#) will draw back from the [coast](#) half of the wave period prior to the wave getting to the [coast](#). If the slope of the coast is not deep, the water may (3)_____ for hundreds of metres. People who do not know of the danger will often remain at the shore.

Tsunamis cannot (4)_____. However, there are ways to help stop people from [dying](#) from a tsunami. Some (5)_____ with lots of tsunamis may use warning systems which may warn the population before the big waves reach the land. Because an [earthquake](#) that caused the tsunami can be felt before the wave gets to the shore, people can be warned to go somewhere safe.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------|---------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. long | B. far | C. wide | D. large |
| 2. A. from | B. of | C. at | D. in |
| 3. A. move away | B. go along | C. spread out | D. pull back |
| 4. A. prevent | B. go along | C. spread out | D. be prevented |
| 5. A. countries | B. regions | C. states | D. districts |

VI. Read the following passage about tornadoes and choose the best answer for each question.

Tornadoes

Did you ever see the movie The Wizard of Oz? A tornado sweeps up Dorothy and Toto, sending them to a new world where there are witches and talking lions! That entire story is fiction, but tornadoes are real and they are serious business. In fact, they can be the most dangerous storms of all.

Tornadoes are sometimes referred to as twisters or cyclones. They are shaped like a cylinder. They are born in thunderclouds. The winds inside a tornado swirl around and around and can be more than 300 miles per hour (mph). The winds are so strong that tornadoes can lift animals, cars and even horses.

The United States has more tornadoes than any other country in the world. State such as Texas, Oklahoma, Kansas, and Nebraska are hit hard by tornadoes. This part of the country is known as "Tornado Alley". Tornado season is during the springtime and summer. If the conditions are right, a tornado can happen any time of year.

1. Where do tornadoes begin?

A. in the ocean B. underground C. in cyclones D. in thunderclouds

2. Why does the author mention The Wizard of Oz at the beginning of the passage?

A. to give a famous example of a tornado

B. to give a history of tornadoes

C. to show that hurricanes are not real

D. to explain why tornadoes are dangerous

3. Based on the passage, people who live in Tornado Alley should_____

A. expect tornadoes only during the summer.

B. be very familiar with the movie The Wizard of Oz.

C. be prepared for the dangers of tornadoes.

D. think about moving to the United States.

4. The word conditions in the last paragraph means_____.

A. preparation B. dangerous hazards C. the way things are D. lucky feelings

5. What is the main idea of this passage?

A. Some states get tornadoes more than other states.

B. Tornadoes are dangerous storms that affect the U.S.

C. Tornadoes are different from how they are in movies.

D. Many tornadoes do not cause a lot of damage.

VII. Find a mistake in the four underlined parts of each sentence and correct it.

1. Hundreds of houses destroyed after a tornado hit the small town of Texas.

A B C D

2. Many people got injured in the storm because they weren't prepared for the disaster.

A B C D

3. It is reported that six people trapped in collapsed buildings have freed so far.

A B C D

4. The earthquake occurred at midday when many people had had lunch.

A B C D

5. Do you know that the word "tsunami" takes from the Japanese for "harbor wave"

A B C D

1.B – were destroyed

2. C. hadn't been prepared
3. D. have been freed
4. D. were having
5. C is taken

VIII. Complete the second sentence so that it has similar meaning to the first sentence.

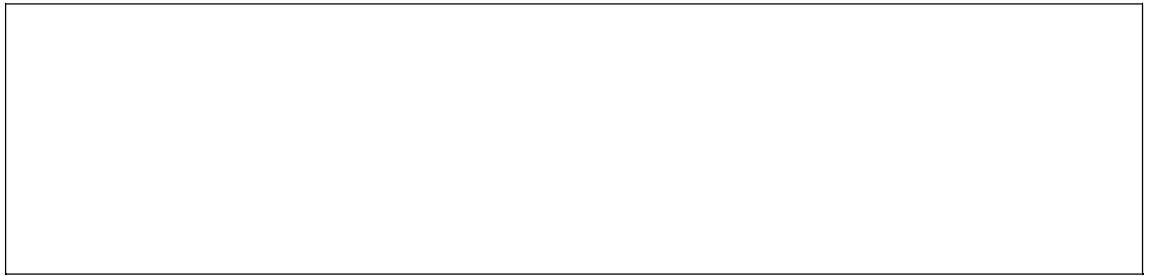
1. Powerful tsunami waves carried ships many kilometers inland.
Ships were carried many kilometers inland by powerful tsunami waves.
2. Many natural disasters have been caused by global warming.
Global warming has caused many natural disasters.
3. They provided food then cleared up the debris.
After they had provided food, they cleared up the debris.
4. Tornadoes can move objects as big as a car.
Objects as big as a car can be moved by tornadoes.
5. The northern part of the city wasn't struck by the typhoon.
The typhoon didn't strike the northern part of the city.

IX. Suggested answer

An earthquake measuring 7.8 on the Richter scale hit Nepal at 11.56 NST on April 25th, 2015. It was the most powerful earthquake to strike Nepal since 1934. The earthquake occurred in central Nepal. It also affected India, Bangladesh and Tibet, China. The earthquake killed more than 8,800 people and injured over 23, 000 people. Hundreds of thousands of people were made homeless with entire villages flattened. Kathmandu Burbar Square, a UNESCO World Heritage Site, was destroyed. The earthquake also caused an avalanche on Mount Everest which killed at least 19 people. About 90% of soldiers from Nepalese Army were sent to stricken areas. Many countries and international organizations sent medical experts, emergency workers, rescue staff, and money as well as providing medical supplies, food and equipment to help Nepal (129 words).

TEST NATURAL DISASTERS (UNIT 9)

I. Circle the word marked A, B, C or D with a different stress pattern from the others.



1. When the earthquake happened, all the buildings in this area completely_____.
2. Fortunately many people were warned of the danger and they had taken _____ before the earthquake happened.
3. The_____has raged since early morning, many trees and animals have been burnt up.
4. All people in the village rushed into the public shelters as soon as the_____erupted.
5. Several people were going along when suddenly there was a_____crashing down the hillside and blocked the road in front of them.
6. Tankers full of water were sent, but it was too late to save many of the animals and crops there. The_____made the whole area like a vast desert.
7. When the_____happened last year, the river overflowed in several places and huge areas of farming were several meters underwater. Boats were being used to rescue people in nearby villages.
8. The_____swept onwards, covering everything in its path. The travelers had to get off their camels and lie down until it had eventually passed.

9. Suddenly the ground shook beneath our feet and tall buildings opposite my college began to sway. I immediately realized that it was an_____.

10. The_____already strengthened considerably and the sea was very rough. As a result ferries across the harbor stopped sailing and all large ships put out to the sea.

III. Reading. Read the text and then choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

Two of the most dangerous storms which affect America are hurricanes and tornadoes. They are very much feared by anyone who may live in the path of their destruction.

Every year homes are destroyed by their fury and often lives are lost. Most people who live near the coast are forced to evacuate their homes and to move to safer areas until the storm passes. Floods are caused along the coasts by both the heavy rain and a storm tide that is considerably above normal water level. The high winds, coastal flooding and torrential rains associated with a hurricane cause enormous damage.

Hurricanes usually develop between July and October. Once they hit land they carry tremendous power with driving rain and wind.

Tornadoes are violent low-pressured storms. These storms occur most often during the summer months and are noticeable by their strong wind and lack of rain. The sky turns black as dust is sucked up into the air. Tornadoes are capable of lifting quite heavy objects from the ground. They can pick up trees and cars right into the air and even uplift heavier objects such as homes and railway cars.

Both hurricanes and tornadoes cause millions of dollars worth of damage each year. Today they can be predicted more easily than in the past, but they cannot be stopped or ignored.

1. What are two of the most dangerous storms which affect America?

- A. Thunderstorms and hurricanes
- B. Typhoons and thunderstorms.
- C. Hurricanes and tornadoes
- D. Hurricanes and typhoons

2. At which part of the year do hurricanes usually develop?

- | | |
|----------------------------|--|
| A July and August only. | C From the seventh to the ninth month. |
| B Between July and August. | D They develop throughout the year. |

3. What is the major similarity of both a hurricane and a tornado?

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-------------------------------------|
| A They cover a larger area. | C They are not accompanied by rain. |
| B They have either wind and speed. | D They can cause great damage. |

4. Which of the following is true of tornadoes and hurricanes?

- A They cannot be predicted with accuracy.
- C Tornadoes are more dangerous than hurricanes.
- B They are easier to control today than in the past.
- D They can be predicted today with greater accuracy.

5. Which of the following was not mentioned in the article?

- A The damage cause by hurricanes and tornadoes.
- C The number of people killed each year by these storms.

- B The tremendous power of these storms.
D The time of year when they are most likely to strike.

IV. Read the conversation and answer the questions.

Hoa: Hi, Mary.

Mary: Hi, Hoa.

Hoa: Did you hear the news on TV early this morning?

Mary: No, I didn't. What happened?

Hoa: Last night, a landslide from a high mountain moved down a small village in Ha Giang Province.

Mary: Where is Ha Giang?

Hoa: It's in the north of Viet Nam.

Mary: Was anyone injured?

Hoa: The authorities confirmed six dead, eighteen injured and as many as ninety-five people missing. Only a few minor injuries were reported.

Mary: Oh, no. That's terrible. Did it cause any damage to property?

Hoa: Yes, all the houses in the village were destroyed.

Mary: That's awful. How is the government helping the people there?

Hoa: They've sent rescue workers and army men to find people who were buried in their houses. Medical supplies, food and rescue equipment have also been sent.

Mary: Thank God. I hope they'll soon find the missing people.

Questions:

1. What happened to a village in Ha Giang Province last night?

2. How many people were dead and injured?

3. How many people were missing?

4. What was the damage to property?

5. What is the government doing to help people there?

V. Choose A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. If this factory continues _____ poison into the lake, all the fish will die.

A. pouring B. dumping C. pumping D. sacking

2. When thermal pollution happens, the water temperature in streams, rivers, lakes and oceans _____.
_____.

A. changes B. keeps C. remains D. stays

3. The sight of too many advertising billboards overhead poles and shop signs causes _____ pollution.

A. air B. light C. noise D. visual

4. _____ you ever been to any English speaking countries?

A. Do B. Have C. Were D. Are

5. Australia is home to _____ animals like kangaroos and koalas

A. only B. rare C. unique D. precious

VI. Change these sentences into passive voice.

1. The flood happened early this morning in Quang Binh Province and now the government is sending aid to the flood victims.

2. The earthquake struck the city and destroyed completely thousands of buildings and houses.

3. Our government has declared a state of emergency following the earthquake.

4. When the typhoon happened, they had moved most of the people there to safe area.\

5. The storm destroyed his house completely and now he is living with friends.

VII. Writing. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

Ex. North America/ deserts/ very/ diverse/ so/ they/ provide/ a / good/ basic/ understanding/ desert/ ecology.

-> North America deserts are very diverse, so they provide a good basic for understanding desert ecology.

1. within/ last/ 100 years/ deserts/ been/ growing/ at/ frightening/ speed/.

2. people/ living/ near/ the/ edge/ Gobi Desert/ will/ leave/ homes/ if/ sandstorms/ are/ not/ stopped.

3. local/ man/ said/ mudslide/ was/ caused/ by/ ground/ which/ has/ been/ made/ unstable/ by/ heavy rainfall/.

4. where/ you/ when/ the/ earthquake/ began/ yesterday?

5. that/ was/ terrible/ earthquake/ but/ luckily/ we/ survived/.

KEY TO TEST NATURAL DISATERS (UNIT 9)

TEST NATURAL DISATERS (UNIT 9)

I. Circle the word marked A, B, C or D with a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. collapse B. **damage** C. erupt D. affect
2. A. disaster B. eruption C. pollution D. **permanent**
3. A. **volcano** B. temperature C. illustrate D. station
4. A. tsunami B. typhoon C. **thunderstorm** D. tornado
5. A. accommodation B. **contribution** C. evacuation D. contamination

II. Fill each blank with a word/ phrase in the box

Flood	earthquake	sandstorm	forest fire	shelter
	Landslide	collapsed	typhoon draught	volcano

1. When the earthquake happened, all the buildings in this area completely_____**collapsed**
2. Fortunately many people were warned of the danger and they had taken _____**shelter** before the earthquake happened.
3. The _____**forest fire** _____ has raged since early morning, many trees and animals have been burnt up.
4. All people in the village rushed into the public shelters as soon as the_____ **volcano** _____ erupted.
5. Several people were going along when suddenly there was a_____ **Landslide** _____ crashing down the hillside and blocked the road in front of them.
6. Tankers full of water were sent, but it was too late to save many of the animals and crops there. The _____ **draught** _____ made the whole area like a vast desert.
7. When the _____ **Flood** _____ happened last year, the river overflowed in several places and huge areas of farming were several meters underwater. Boats were being used to rescue people in nearby villages.

8. The _____ **sandstorm** _____ swept onwards, covering everything in its path. The travelers had to get off their camels and lie down until it had eventually passed.
9. Suddenly the ground shook beneath our feet and tall buildings opposite my college began to sway. I immediately realized that it was an _____ **earthquake** _____.
10. The _____ **typhoon** _____ already strengthened considerably and the sea was very rough. As a result ferries across the harbor stopped sailing and all large ships put out to the sea.

III. Reading. Read the text and then choose the best answer A, B, C or D.

Two of the most dangerous storms which affect America are hurricanes and tornadoes. They are very much feared by anyone who may live in the path of their destruction.

Every year homes are destroyed by their fury and often lives are lost. Most people who live near the coast are forced to evacuate their homes and to move to safer areas until the storm passes. Floods are caused along the coasts by both the heavy rain and a storm tide that is considerably above normal water level. The high winds, coastal flooding and torrential rains associated with a hurricane cause enormous damage.

Hurricanes usually develop between July and October. Once they hit land they carry tremendous power with driving rain and wind.

Tornadoes are violent low-pressured storms. These storms occur most often during the summer months and are noticeable by their strong wind and lack of rain. The sky turns black as dust is sucked up into the air. Tornadoes are capable of lifting quite heavy objects from the ground. They can pick up trees and cars right into the air and even uplift heavier objects such as homes and railway cars.

Both hurricanes and tornadoes cause millions of dollars worth of damage each year. Today they can be predicted more easily than in the past, but they cannot be stopped or ignored.

1. What are two of the most dangerous storms which affect America?

- A. Thunderstorms and hurricanes
- B. Typhoons and thunderstorms.
- C. Hurricanes and tornadoes**
- D. Hurricanes and typhoons

2. At which part of the year do hurricanes usually develop?

- A July and August only.
- B Between July and August.**
- C From the seventh to the ninth month.
- D They develop throughout the year.

3. What is the major similarity of both a hurricane and a tornado?

- A They cover a larger area.
- B They have either wind and speed.
- C They are not accompanied by rain.
- D They can cause great damage.**

4. Which of the following is true of tornadoes and hurricanes?

- A They cannot be predicted with accuracy.
- B They are easier to control today than in the past.
- C Tornadoes are more dangerous than hurricanes.
- D They can be predicted today with greater accuracy.**

5. Which of the following was not mentioned in the article?

- A The damage cause by hurricanes and tornadoes.
- C The number of people killed each year by these storms.**
- B The tremendous power of these storms.
- D The time of year when they are most likely to strike.

IV. Read the conversation and answer the questions.

Read the conversation and answer the questions.

1. What happened to a village in Ha Giang Province last night?

1. A landslide from a high mountain moved down a small village in Ha Giang Province last night.

2. How many people were dead and injured?

2. There were twenty-four people in total.

3. How many people were missing?

3. There were ninety-five people.

4. What was the damage to property?

4. All the houses in the village were destroyed.

5. What is the government doing to help people there?

5. They've sent rescue workers and army men to find people who were buried in their houses. Medical supplies, food and rescue equipment have also been sent.

V. Choose A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. If this factory continues _____ poison into the lake, all the fish will die.

A. pouring B. **dumping** C. pumping D. sacking

2. When thermal pollution happens, the water temperature in streams, rivers, lakes and oceans _____.

A. **changes** B. keeps C. remains D. stays

3. The sight of too many advertising billboards overhead poles and shop signs causes _____ pollution.

A. air B. light C. noise D. **visual**

4. _____ you ever been to any English speaking countries?

A. Do B. **Have** C. Were D. Are

5. Australia is home to _____ animals like kangaroos and koalas

- A. only B. rare C. **unique** D. precious

VI. Change these sentences into passive voice.

1. The flood happened early this morning in Quang Binh Province and now aid is being sent to the flood victims (by the government)
2. The city was struck by the earthquake and thousands of buildings and houses were completely destroyed.
3. A state of emergency following the earthquake has been declared by our government.
4. When the typhoon happened, most of the people there had been moved to safe areas.
5. His house was completely destroyed by the storm and now he is living with his friends.

COMMUNICATION (UNIT 10)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Body language</i>	/əbʌdi ləæŋDʒʌdʒ/	Ngôn ngữ cơ thể, cử chỉ	<i>Non-verbal language</i>	/nɔːn vɜːbəl/ ləæŋDʒʌdʒ/	Ngôn ngữ ko dùng lời nói
<i>Communicate (v)</i> <i>Communication (n)</i> <i>Communicative (adj)</i>	/kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪʃn/ /kəˈmjuːnɪkətɪv/	Giao tiếp Sự giao tiếp	<i>Smart phone (n)</i>	/smɑːt fəʊn/	Điện thoại thông minh
<i>Communication breakdown (n)</i>	/kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪʃn/ əbreɪkdaʊn/	Giao tiếp ko thành công, ko hiểu nhau, ngưng trệ giao tiếp	<i>Snail mail (n)</i>	/sneɪl meɪl/	Thư gửi qua đường bưu điện, thư chậm
<i>Communication channel (n)</i>	/kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪʃn/ ətɪ ænl/	Kênh giao tiếp	<i>Social media (n)</i>	/sɔːʃl miədiə/	Mạng xã hội
<i>Cultural difference (n)</i>	/kʌltʃrəl ˈfɪrəns/ ədʌfrəns/	Khác biệt văn hóa	<i>Telepathy (n)</i>	/tələˈpəθi/	Thần giao cách cảm
<i>Cyber world (n)</i>	/saɪbɜː wɜːld/	Thế giới ảo, thế giới mạng	<i>Text (n, v)</i>	/tekst/	Tin nhắn, nhắn tin
<i>Chat room (n)</i>	/tʃæt ruːm/	Phòng chat	<i>Verbal language</i>	/vɜːbəl/	Ngôn ngữ

		(trên mạng)	(n)	/ɒləŋdʒiˈfəʊn/	dùng lời nói
Face-to-face (adj, adv)	/ˈfeɪs tuː ˈfeɪs/	Trực diện (trái nghĩa với trên mạng)	Video conference (n-v)	/vɪˈdiəʊ kɒnˈfɛrɪns/	Hội thảo, hội họp qua mạng có hình ảnh
Interact (v) Interaction (n) Interactive (adj)	/ˈɪntərækt/ /ˈɪntərækʃən/ /ˈɪntəræktɪv/	Tương tác Sự tương tác Có tính tương tác	Netiquette (n)	/ˈnetɪket/	Phép lịch sự khi giao tiếp trên mạng
Landline phone (n)	/ˈlændlaɪn/ /fɒn/	Điện thoại bàn			
Language barrier (n)	/ˈlæŋdʒwəˈbæri(r)/	Rào cản ngôn ngữ			
Message board (n)	/ˈmesɪdʒ bɔːd/	Diễn đàn trên mạng			
Multimedia (n)	/ˈmʌltiˈmiːdiə/	Đa phương tiện			

II. Grammar:

- Future continuous: review

- V + to-infinitive

B. EXERCISES

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. other B. leather C. wealthy D. brother
2. A. television B. elephant C. section D. Swedish
3. A. explain B. current C. desire D. electric
4. A. threaten B. thread C. seat D. bread
5. A. deaf B. leaf C. meat D. heat

II. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the others

1. A. appliance B. activity C. adventure D. average
2. A favorite B. government C. influence D. identify
3. A. economic B. volcanic C. disappointed D. scientific

4. A. reputation B. description C. suggestion D.
pollution
5. A. magazine B. picture C. documentary D.
entertain

III. Complete the sentences with the words in the box

conference	connecting	conversations	email	online
post	share	signal	telepathy	texting

- I cannot contact her by mobile phone – the network_____is so weak here.
- We'll_____an article next week revealing the results of the experiment.
- For more information about the English courses, please _____ me at:
nguyenanson@gmail.com
- We had a video_____yesterday. Mr. Taylors joined us from Australia, and Ms. Young from Canada.
- Today there are many different ways to communicate_____, including social networking, chat, VoIP and blogging.
- The supposed process of communicating through means other than the senses, as the direct exchange of thoughts is called_____.
- Chat and instant messaging programmes allow you to have_____with your friends or just write them a quick note.
- Twitter lets you_____brief messages (or “tweets”) with the entire worlds or with just your circle of friends.
- The Internet isn't just about finding information. It's about_____ with friends, family and people you've never met before.
- What's she_____here? I cannot understand this shorthand.

IV. Put the verbs in brackets in the future continuous tense to show what will be happening in the year of 2100.

In the year of 2100, ...

- We_____information with the help of hybrid languages, using visuals rather than letters. (share)
- We_____a universal translator to deal with any foreign language. (use)
- Scientists _____ man-made meat because there will be no land for farming. (develop)
- Advanced technology _____ people to avoid the feeling of pain. (help)
- Doctors_____the Vscan – a simple handheld device to see what is going on inside the patient's body. (use)
- Scientists_____the deserts to farming lands. (change)
- We_____the scanning technology to create the metal products. (use)

8. Scientists_____the technology of organs regrowth so that there will not be any disabled people. (develop)
9. Scientists _____ the DNA banks to save endangered species. (use)
10. “Information lens” _____ our eyes to get details of what is seeing. (make)

V. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. My mother wants me (post)_____this letter before afternoon.
2. He prefers (have)_____chicken soup rather than (drink)_____milk.
3. My mother made my brother (tidy)_____his room.
4. The teacher told his students (stop)_____making noise.
5. My father doesn't mind (do)_____the housework, but he hates (do)_____the cooking.
6. Mai suggested (go)_____for a drink.

VI. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find out and correct it.

1. As soon as he will come back from his office, tell him to see me.
A B C D
2. He regretted notsay goodbye to his girlfriend at the airport.
A B C D
3. The town we visited was a four-days journey from our hotel, so we took the train instead of the bus.
A B C D
4. Our new neighbors had been living in Paris since ten years before moving to their present house.
A B C D
5. The explanation that our teacher gave us was difficult than the one you gave us.
A B C D

VII. Choose the best answer for each of the following sentences

1. In a message board you can_____messages or post questions.
A. raise B. arrive C. text D. leave
2. You shrug your shoulders means “_____”.
A. I'm happy C. I'm angry
B. I don't know D. Sorry. I need to go now.
3. Using music, codes or signs to communicate is called_____communication.
A. verbal B. non-verbal C. public D. non-public
4. I experienced one communication_____in Japan when I didn't understand their body languages.
A. breakdown B. technique C. ability D. device
5. You should try looking for his telephone number on the company_____as it may be there.
A. logo B. email C. website D. forum
6. John managed_____his family in England by using Zalo

- A. contact B. to contact C. contacting D. to contacting
7. They advised_____ video chatting in the next meeting
A. use B. to use C. using D. will use
8. We_____to have an Internet connection installed in our house next week
A. completed B. suggested C. admitted D. arranged
9. They _____about video conferences at this time next Monday.
A. will talk B. will be talking C. are talking D. are going to talk
10. We_____with each other by mobile phone in 2050.
A. won't be communicating C. haven't communicated
B. aren't communicating D. aren't going to communicate

VIII. Fill in each numbered blank with a correct word to complete the following passage.

The Internet is the world's largest computer network with over 100 million users worldwide and this number (1)_____doubling from year to year. The Internet is like an international highway of information. Now, you can sit at your computer, choose a route and (2)_____at your destination – that is, the information you need. Today, from your computer, you (3)___access a library in one country, talk to an expert on a certain topic in a second country and send your (4)_____information to someone doing research in a third. So, we don't know what will be (5)_____in the not-too-distant future.

The Internet was born (6)_____scientists attempted to connect the American Defence Network to other satellite networks in (7)_____to exchange information. Soon, scientific and educational institutions as well as research departments became interested (8)_____linking up, and, before long, the Internet had expanded into an international information and communication network.

The Internet now (9)_____all the countries in the world. You can be connected to the Internet directly through your own computer or you can hook up to (10)_____access system which allows you to use some of the Internet's services.

IX. Match the five sentence-halves in column A with their second halves in column B to complete the sentences

A	B
1. Sometimes people have problems communicating	A. because they find it difficult to agree with other people's ideas.
2. When a person's style of communicating is different from ours,	B. we must be flexible.
3. If we want to avoid communication problems,	C. we should tell the other person openly and gently
4. If there is a breakdown in communication,	D. because of differences in their conversational styles
5. Sometimes we have to adapt people's opinions	E. we may not understand the person's intention.

X. Read the following passage and choose the best answer for each question

Telephones help people speak to one another when they are apart. For more than a hundred years, nearly every telephone was a landline. A landline telephone is one that needs to be connected by a wire to a network of other telephones. Because of the wires, people could not take those telephones with them when they left their homes or offices.

What if you had to make a call while you were away from home? You had to find a pay phone. Pay phones are landlines found in public places. Many pay phones are on the street. You can make a call from inside a glass or metal space called a phone booth. Once you are inside the booth, you put coins into a slot in the phone to make a call.

Telephones have seen a lot of progress. Today, many people carry cell phones. Cell phones do not need to be connected with wires. They can be used almost anywhere and can fit in an adult's hand.

Many cell phones sold today are smart phones. A smart phone is a cell phone that has lots of computer-style features. For example, people use smart phones to check e-mail and go on the Internet. And all that can be done using something small enough to carry in a pocket!

1. What is a landline telephone?
 - A. a telephone that can be carried around in your pocket and used anywhere
 - B. a telephone that can be used in a public place
 - C. a telephone that needs to be connected by a wire to a network of other telephones
 - D. a telephone that can be used to check e-mail and go on the Internet
2. The article describes an example of a landline. What is an example of a landline?
 - A. a pay phone
 - B. a smart phone
 - C. a cell phone
 - D. a mobile phone
3. Pay phones are probably not used as much today as they were in the past. What piece of evidence supports this conclusion?
 - A. Many people today carry cell phones, which can be used almost anywhere
 - B. Payphones are landlines that can be found in public places.
 - C. People could not take landlines with them when they left their homes.
 - D. People put coins into a slot in the pay phone to make a call.
4. What might be a reason that cell phones were invented?
 - A. People wanted to be able to make calls from their homes or offices.
 - B. People wanted to be able to make calls away from home without finding a pay phone
 - C. People wanted to be able to speak to one another when they were apart.
 - D. People wanted to be able to speak and see each other from far distance.
5. What is the main idea of this article?
 - A. Telephones are used to keep people apart as much as possible
 - B. Cell phones are much less useful than landlines and pay phones.
 - C. Landlines and pay phones still play an important part in world nowadays.
 - D. Telephones have been used for many years, and they have changed a lot over time.

XI. Read the text, and match the headings (A-F) with paragraphs (1-5). There is one extra heading that you do not need.

A – Why do “friends” websites seem dangerous?

B – How do “friends” websites work?

C – What’s the best advice for people who want to use “friends” websites?

D – Where do Millie’s friends live?

E – How can I find “friends” websites?

F – Why are “friends” websites popular?

1. _____ Millie is 14 years old and lives in Miami. She has 204 friends – and she makes two or three more friends every week. About 20 of her friends also live in Miami. Some go to the same school, and others go to the same music clubs and sports centers. She often sees them. The others live in other cities and other countries: England, Canada, Japan ... She never meets these friends, but she talks to them on the Internet. They are her “MySpace Friends”.

2. _____ Because of websites like MySpace, Yahoo 360 and Bebo, people can make friends online. These websites are very popular all over the world, especially with young people. Users have their own homepage. They give information about themselves. They write letters for their webpage, show photos and give opinions. They write about their favourite films, music and TV programmes.

3. _____ For many young people, a good homepage is an important part of their image. It says: “This is me! I have something to say. These things – and these people – are important in my life.” And these websites are also an easy way to talk to a lot of different people. That is why teenagers like these “friends” websites.

4. _____ But some people are worried that these websites aren’t safe. For example, it is impossible to know that the information on a homepage is true. Perhaps the 14-year-old girl you talk to online is really a 40-year-old man. So here is some advice.

5. _____ Keep your webpage private. (only friends can see a private homepage). Do not put photos of yourself on your homepage. Do not meet people that you only know because of the website. And finally, remember that online friends are fun, but they are not the same as real friends.

XII. Use the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2 – 5 words in total)

1. Don’t miss seeing the Opera House when you are in Sydney.

forget Don’t _____ the Opera House when you are in Sydney.

2. There will be a discussion about the possibility of using video chatting at this time next week.
discussing They _____ the possibility of using video chatting at this time next week.

3. It’s a pity I don’t have a smart phone now.

wish I _____ a smart phone now.

4. Landline telephones are predicted not to be used in 2030.

using People _____ landline telephones in 2030.

5. I don’t feel like chatting online at the moment.

prefer I'd _____ at the moment.

XIII. Use the suggestions below to write a paragraph of around 150 – 170 words about the advantages of emails.

Topic sentence: Introduction of emails: email (electronic mail); 1st emails: 1960s

Supporting idea 1: Fast (deliver at once; not have to wait for days to get a response/answer)

Supporting idea 2: Simple and informal language (write and send emails quickly, not have to spend too much time choosing vocabulary and grammar)

Supporting idea 3: Environment-friendly (not use paper, save trees)

Supporting idea 4: Can have pictures (send birthday cards, newsletters)

Concluding sentence: a quick, easy way to stay in touch with family, friends; important part in modern lives.

KEY - COMMUNICATION (UNIT 10)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

Body language	/əbɔːdi ləŋɡwɪʒ/	Ngôn ngữ cơ thể, cử chỉ	Non-verbal language	/nɔːn vɔːbl ləŋɡwɪʒ/	Ngôn ngữ ko dùng lời nói
Communicate (v) Communication (n) Communicative (adj)	/kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪt/ /kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪʃn/ /kəˈmjuːnɪkətɪv/	Giao tiếp Sự giao tiếp	Smart phone (n)	/smɑːt fəʊn/	Điện thoại thông minh
Communication breakdown (n)	/kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪʃn/ əˈbreɪkdaʊn/	Giao tiếp ko thành công, ko hiểu nhau, ngưng trệ giao tiếp	Snail mail (n)	/sneɪl meɪl/	Thư gửi qua đường bưu điện, thư chậm
Communication channel (n)	/kəˈmjuːnɪkeɪʃn/ ˈtʃænl/	Kênh giao tiếp	Social media (n)	/səʊʃl miədiə/	Mạng xã hội
Cultural difference (n)	/kʌltʃrəl ˈfɪrəns/ ˈdʌfrəns/	Khác biệt văn hóa	Telepathy (n)	/tələˈpəθi/	Thần giao cách cảm
Cyber world (n)	/saɪbɜː wɜːld/	Thế giới ảo, thế giới mạng	Text (n, v)	/tekst/	Tin nhắn, nhắn tin
Chat room (n)	/tʃæt ru:m/	Phòng chat (trên mạng)	Verbal language (n)	/vɔːbl ləŋɡwɪʒ/	Ngôn ngữ dùng lời nói

Face-to-face (adj, adv)	/ˈfeɪs tə ˈfeɪs/	Trực diện (trái nghĩa với trên mạng)	Video conference (n-v)	/vɪˈdiːŋkɒnfrəns/	Hội thảo, hội họp qua mạng có hình ảnh
Interact (v) Interaction (n) Interactive (adj)	/ˈɪntərækt/ /ˈɪntərækʃn/ /ˈɪntəræktɪv/	Tương tác Sự tương tác Có tính tương tác	Netiquette (n)	/ˈnetɪket/	Phép lịch sự khi giao tiếp trên mạng
Landline phone (n)	/ˈlændlaɪn/ /fɒn/	Điện thoại bàn			
Language barrier (n)	/ˈlæŋdʒbæriː/ /ˈbæriː(r)/	Rào cản ngôn ngữ			
Message board (n)	/ˈmesɪdʒ bɔːd/	Diễn đàn trên mạng			
Multimedia (n)	/ˌmʌltiˈmiːdiə/	Đa phương tiện			

II. Grammar:

THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN

(Continuous future tense)

I- CẤU TRÚC CỦA THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN

1. Khẳng định:

S + will + be + V-ing

Ví dụ:

- I **will be staying** at the hotel in Nha Trang at 1 p.m tomorrow. (Tôi sẽ đang ở khách sạn ở Nha Trang lúc 1h ngày mai.)

- She **will be working** at the factory when you come tomorrow. (Cô ấy sẽ đang làm việc tại nhà máy lúc bạn đến ngày mai.)

2. Phủ định:

S + will + not + be + V-ing

Câu phủ định của thì tương lai tiếp diễn ta chỉ việc thêm “not” vào sau “will”.

CHÚ Ý:

- will not = won't

Ví dụ:

- We **won't be studying** at 8 a.m tomorrow. (Chúng tôi sẽ đang không học lúc 8h sáng ngày mai.)

- The children **won't be playing** with their friends when you come this weekend. (*Bọn trẻ sẽ đang không chơi với bạn của chúng khi bạn đến vào cuối tuần này.*)

3. Câu hỏi:

Will + S + be + V-ing ?

Trả lời:

Yes, S + will

No, S + won't

Câu hỏi trong thì tương lai tiếp diễn ta chỉ việc đảo “will” lên trước chủ ngữ.

Ví dụ:

- **Will** you **be waiting** for the train at 9 a.m next Monday? (*Bạn sẽ đang đợi tàu vào lúc 9h sáng thứ Hai tuần tới phải không?*)

Yes, I will./ No, I won't.

- **Will** she **be doing** the housework at 10 p.m tomorrow? (*Cô ấy sẽ đang làm công việc nhà lúc 10h tối ngày mai phải không?*)

Yes, she will./ No, she won't.

II- CÁCH SỬ DỤNG CỦA THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN.

1. Dùng để diễn tả một hành động hay sự việc đang diễn ra tại một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai.

Ví dụ:

- At 12 o'clock tomorrow, my friends and I **will be having** lunch at school. (*Vào lúc 12h ngày mai, các bạn tôi và tôi sẽ đang ăn trưa tại trường.*)

Ta thấy “vào lúc 12h ngày mai” là một thời điểm xác định trong tương lai, và tại thời điểm đó một hành động hay một sự việc sẽ đang diễn ra. Vậy nên ta chia thì tương lai tiếp diễn.

- We **will be climbing** on the mountain at this time next Saturday. (*Chúng tôi sẽ đang leo núi vào thời điểm này thứ 7 tuần tới.*)

“Tại thời điểm này thứ 7 tuần tới” là một mốc thời gian xác định trong tương lai, và tại thời điểm đó một hành động hay một sự việc sẽ diễn ra. Vậy nên ta chia thì tương lai tiếp diễn.

2. Dùng để diễn tả một hành động, một sự việc đang xảy ra thì một hành động, sự việc khác xen vào trong tương lai.

- Hành động, sự việc đang xảy ra chia thì tương lai tiếp diễn, hành động, sự việc xen vào chia thì hiện tại đơn.

Ví dụ:

- When you **come** tomorrow, they **will be playing** tennis.

Ta thấy có hai sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai: “tôi đến” và “họ đang chơi quần vợt”. Trong khi việc “chơi quần vợt” đang diễn ra thì có sự việc xen vào là “tôi đến”. Như vậy, sự việc đang diễn ra ta chia thì tương lai tiếp diễn, và sự việc xen vào ta chia thì hiện tại đơn.

- She **will be waiting** for me when I arrive tomorrow. (Cô ấy sẽ đang đợi tôi khi tôi đến vào ngày mai.)

Ta thấy có hai sự việc sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai: “tôi đến” và “cô ấy đợi tôi”. Trong khi việc “cô ấy đợi tôi” đang diễn ra thì có sự việc xen vào là “tôi đến”. Vậy sự việc đang diễn ra ta chia thì tương lai tiếp diễn, và sự việc xen vào ta chia thì hiện tại đơn.

III- DẤU HIỆU NHẬN BIẾT THÌ TƯƠNG LAI TIẾP DIỄN

Trong câu có các trạng từ chỉ thời gian trong tương lai kèm theo thời điểm xác định:

- at this time/ at this moment + thời gian trong tương lai: Vào thời điểm này

- At + giờ cụ thể + thời gian trong tương lai: vào lúc

Ví dụ:

- At this time tomorrow I **will be going** shopping in Singapore. (Vào thời điểm này ngày mai, tôi sẽ đang đi mua sắm ở Singapore.)

- At 10 a.m tomorrow my mother **will be cooking** lunch. (Vào 10h sáng ngày mai mẹ tôi sẽ đang nấu bữa trưa.)

IV- CÁC QUY TẮC KHI THÊM ĐUÔI -ING

Thông thường ta chỉ cần cộng thêm “-ing” vào sau động từ. Nhưng có một số chú ý như sau:

1. Với động từ tận cùng là MỘT chữ “e”:

- Ta bỏ “e” rồi thêm “-ing”.

Ví dụ: write – writing type – typing come – coming

- Tận cùng là HAI CHỮ “e” ta không bỏ “e” mà vẫn thêm “-ing” bình thường.

2. Với động từ có MỘT âm tiết, tận cùng là MỘT PHỤ ÂM, trước là MỘT NGUYÊN ÂM

- Ta nhân đôi phụ âm cuối rồi thêm “-ing”.

Ví dụ: stop – stop**pp**ing get – get**tt**ing put – put**tt**ing

- CHÚ Ý:

Các trường hợp ngoại lệ:

beg**in** – beg**inn**ing travel – trav**ell**ing

prefer – prefer**r**ing permit – permit**tt**ing

3. Với động từ tận cùng là “ie”

- Ta đổi “ie” thành “y” rồi thêm “-ing”.

Ví dụ: lie – l**y**ing die – d**y**ing

To + V infinitive

- Được sử dụng như một tính từ hoặc phó từ để thể hiện ý định hoặc mục đích

Ví dụ:

The letter says I'm to wait outside

He is the man to talk to

(In order) to meditate, one must free one's mind .

- Được sử dụng sau rất nhiều động từ khác (có thể có hoặc không có tân ngữ)

Ví dụ: she failed to pass the exam.

I agreed to leave

- được sử dụng như chủ ngữ của câu:

To know me is to love me

To save money now seems impossible.

Một số cách dùng động từ nguyên thể đặc biệt:

• **Verb + to infinitive**: Những động từ sau được theo sau trực tiếp bởi the infinitive:

Agree, appear, arrange, attempt, ask, decide, determine, be determined, fail, endeavour, forget, happen, hope, learn, manage, offer, plan, prepare, promise, prove, refuse, remember, seem, tend, threaten, try, volunteer expect, want, mean.

Ví dụ:

She agreed to pay \$50.

Two men failed to return from the expedition.

The tenants refused to leave.

She volunteered to help the disabled.

He learnt to look after himself.

• **Verb + how/what/when/where/ which/why + to infinitive**

Những động từ sử dụng công thức này là ask, decide, discover, find out, forget, know, learn, remember, see, show + object, think, understand, want to know, wonder.

He discovered how to open the safe.

I found out where to buy fruit cheaply.

She couldn't think what to say.

I showed her which button to press.

• **Verb + object + to infinitive**:

Những động từ theo công thức này là advise, allow, enable, encourage, forbid, force, hear, instruct, invite, let, order, permit, persuade, request, remind, see, train, teach how, urge, warn, tempt.

Ví dụ:

These glasses will enable you to see in the dark.

She encouraged me to try again.

They forbade her to leave the house.

They persuaded us to go with them.

• **Assume, believe, consider, feel, know, suppose, understand + (object) + to be**:

I consider him to be the best candidate

= He is considered to be the best candidate

He is known to be honest.

You are supposed to know the laws of your own country.

Chú ý: Một số động từ có thể đi cùng với cả động từ nguyên thể và V-ing, hãy so sánh sự khác nhau về ý nghĩa giữa chúng.

•Stop + V-ing: dừng làm gì
Stop making noise! (dừng làm ồn)
Stop + to V: dừng để làm gì
I stop to smoke (tôi dừng lại để hút thuốc)

•Remember/forget/regret + to V: nhớ/quên/tiếc sẽ phải làm gì (ở hiện tại và tương lai)
Remember to send this letter (hãy nhớ gửi bức thư này).
Don't forget to buy flowers (đừng quên mua hoa đây)
I regret to inform you that the train was canceled (tôi rất tiếc phải báo tin cho anh rằng chuyến tàu đã bị hủy bỏ)
Remember/forget/regret + V-ing: nhớ/quên/tiếc đã làm gì (ở quá khứ).
I paid
her 2.I still remember that.I still remember paying her 2.I still remember that.I still remember paying her 2

(tôi nhớ đã trả cô ấy 2 đô la)
She will never forget meeting the Queen. (cô ấy không bao giờ quên lần gặp nữ hoàng)
He regrets leaving school early. It is the biggest mistake in his life.

•Try + to V: cố gắng làm gì
I try to pass the exam. (tôi cố gắng vượt qua kì thi)
Try + V-ing: thử làm gì
You should try unlocking the door with this key. (bạn nên thử mở cửa với chiếc khóa này)

•Like + V-ing: thích làm gì vì nó thú vị, hay, cuốn hút, làm để thưởng thức
I like watching TV.
Like + to V: làm việc đó vì nó là tốt và cần thiết.
I want to have a job. I like to learn English.
Would like + to V: mời ai đi đâu
Would you like to go to the cinema?

•Prefer + doing something + to + doing something else.
I prefer driving to travelling by train.
Prefer + to do something + rather than (do) something else
I prefer to drive rather than travel by train.

•Need + to V: cần làm gì
I need to go to school today.
Need + V-ing: mang nghĩa bị động (cần được làm gì)
Your hair needs cutting (tóc của bạn cần được cắt ngắn)
The grass needs cutting.

•Be used to + V-ing: quen với việc gì (ở hiện tại)
I'm used to getting up early. (tôi quen với việc dậy sớm)
Used to + V: thường làm gì trong quá khứ (bây giờ không làm nữa)
I used to get up early when I lived in HCMC
(tôi thường dậy sớm khi tôi sống ở HCMC)

B. EXERCISES

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined.

1. A. other B. leather C. wealthy D. brother
2. A. television B. elephant C. section D. Swedeish
3. A. explain B. current C. desire D. electric
4. A. threaten B. thread C. seat D. bread
5. A. deaf B. leaf C. meat D. heat

II. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the others

1. A. appliance B. activity C. adventure D. average
2. A favorite B. government C. influence D. identify
3. A. economic B. volcanic C. disappointed D. scientific
4. A. reputation B. description C. suggestion D. pollution
5. A. magazine B. picture C. documentary D. entertain

III. Complete the sentences with the words in the box

conference	connecting	conversations	email	online
post	share	signal	telepathy	texting

1. I cannot contact her by mobile phone – the network **signal** is so weak here.
2. We'll **post** an article next week revealing the results of the experiment.
3. For more information about the English courses, please **email** me at: nguyenanson@gmail.com
4. We had a video **conference** yesterday. Mr. Taylors joined us from Australia, and Ms. Young from Canada.
5. Today there are many different ways to communicate **online**, including social networking, chat, VoIP and blogging.
6. The supposed process of communicating through means other than the senses, as the direct exchange of thoughts is called **telepathy**.
7. Chat and instant messaging programmes allow you to have **conversations** with your friends or just write them a quick note.

8. Twitter lets you **share** brief messages (or “tweets”) with the entire worlds or with just your circle of friends.
9. The Internet isn’t just about finding information. It’s about **connecting** with friends, family and people you’ve never met before.
10. What’s she **texting** here? I cannot understand this shorthand.

IV. Put the verbs in brackets in the future continuous tense to show what will be happening in the year of 2100.

In the year of 2100, ...

1. We **will be sharing** information with the help of hybrid languages, using visuals rather than letters. (share)
2. We **will be using** a universal translator to deal with any foreign language. (use)
3. Scientists **will be developing** man-made meat because there will be no land for farming. (develop)
4. Advanced technology **will be helping** people to avoid the feeling of pain. (help)
5. Doctors **will be using** the Vscan – a simple handheld device to see what is going on inside the patient’s body. (use)
6. Scientists **will be changing** the deserts to farming lands. (change)
7. We **will be using** the scanning technology to create the metal products. (use)
8. Scientists **will be developing** the technology of organs regrowth so that there will not be any disabled people. (develop)
9. Scientists **will be using** the DNA banks to save endangered species. (use)
10. “Information lens” **will be making** our eyes to get details of what is seeing. (make)

V. Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verbs in brackets.

1. My mother wants me (post)_____ this letter before afternoon. **to post**
2. He prefers (have)_____ chicken soup rather than (drink)_____ milk. **To have – (to) drink**
3. My mother made my brother (tidy)_____ his room. **tidy**
4. The teacher told his students (stop)_____ making noise. **To stop**
5. My father doesn’t mind (do)_____ the housework, but he hates (do)_____ the cooking. **doing – to do**
6. Mai suggested (go)_____ for a drink. **going**

VI. There is one mistake in each sentence. Find out and correct it.

1. As soon as he will come back from his office, tell him to see me.
A comes B C D
2. He regretted notsay goodbye to his girlfriend at the airport.
A **B to say** C D
3. The town we visited was a four-days journey from our hotel, so we took the train instead of the bus.
A **B four-day journey** C D

4. Our new neighbors had been living in Paris since ten years before moving to their present house.

A

B

C for

D

5. The explanation that our teacher gave us was difficult than the one you gave us.

A

B

C more difficult than

D

VII. Choose the best answer for each of the following sentences

1. In a message board you can _____ messages or post questions.

A. raise

B. arrive

C. text

D. leave

2. You shrug your shoulders means “ _____ ”.

A. I’m happy

C. I’m angry

B. I don’t know

D. Sorry. I need to go now.

3. Using music, codes or signs to communicate is called _____ communication.

A. verbal

B. non-verbal

C. public

D. non-public

4. I experienced one communication _____ in Japan when I didn’t understand their body languages.

A. breakdown

B. technique

C. ability

D. device

5. You should try looking for his telephone number on the company _____ as it may be there.

A. logo

B. email

C. website

D. forum

6. John managed _____ his family in England by using Zalo

A. contact

B. to contact

C. contacting

D. to contacting

7. They advised _____ video chatting in the next meeting

A. use

B. to use

C. using

D. will use

8. We _____ to have an Internet connection installed in our house next week

A. completed

B. suggested

C. admitted

D. arranged

9. They _____ about video conferences at this time next Monday.

A. will talk

B. will be talking

C. are talking

D. are going to talk

10. We _____ with each other by mobile phone in 2050.

A. won’t be communicating

C. haven’t communicated

B. aren’t communicating

D. aren’t going to communicate

VIII. Fill in each numbered blank with a correct word to complete the following passage.

The Internet is the world’s largest computer network with over 100 million users worldwide and this number (1)**is** doubling from year to year. The Internet is like an international highway of information. Now, you can sit at your computer, choose a route and (2)**arrive** at your destination – that is, the information you need. Today, from your computer, you (3)**can** access a library in one country, talk to an expert on a certain topic in a second country and send your (4)**own** information to someone doing research in a third. So, we don’t know what will be (5)**next** in the not-too-distant future.

The Internet was born (6)**when** scientists attempted to connect the American Defence Network to other satellite networks in (7)**order** to exchange information. Soon, scientific and educational

institutions as well as research departments became interested (8) **in** linking up, and, before long, the Internet had expanded into an international information and communication network. The Internet now (9) **reaches** all the countries in the world. You can be connected to the Internet directly through your own computer or you can hook up to (10) **an** access system which allows you to use some of the Internet's services.

IX. Match the five sentence-halves in column A with their second halves in column B to complete the sentences

A	B
1. Sometimes people have problems communicating	A. because they find it difficult to agree with other people's ideas.
2. When a person's style of communicating is different from ours,	B. we must be flexible.
3. If we want to avoid communication problems,	C. we should tell the other person openly and gently
4. If there is a breakdown in communication,	D. because of differences in their conversational styles
5. Sometimes we have to adapt people's opinions	E. we may not understand the person's intention.

1. A 2. E 3. C 4. B 5.D

X. Read the following passage and choose the best answer for each question

Telephones help people speak to one another when they are apart. For more than a hundred years, nearly every telephone was a landline. A landline telephone is one that needs to be connected by a wire to a network of other telephones. Because of the wires, people could not take those telephones with them when they left their homes or offices.

What if you had to make a call while you were away from home? You had to find a pay phone. Pay phones are landlines found in public places. Many pay phones are on the street. You can make a call from inside a glass or metal space called a phone booth. Once you are inside the booth, you put coins into a slot in the phone to make a call.

Telephones have seen a lot of progress. Today, many people carry cell phones. Cell phones do not need to be connected with wires. They can be used almost anywhere and can fit in an adult's hand.

Many cell phones sold today are smart phones. A smart phone is a cell phone that has lots of computer-style features. For example, people use smart phones to check e-mail and go on the Internet. And all that can be done using something small enough to carry in a pocket!

1. What is a landline telephone?

A. a telephone that can be carried around in your pocket and used anywhere

B. a telephone that can be used in a public place

C. a telephone that needs to be connected by a wire to a network of other telephones

D. a telephone that can be used to check e-mail and go on the Internet

2. The article describes an example of a landline. What is an example of a landline?

- A. a pay phone** B. a smart phone C. a cell phone D. a mobile phone
3. Pay phones are probably not used as much today as they were in the past. What piece of evidence supports this conclusion?
- A. **Many people today carry cell phones, which can be used almost anywhere**
 B. Payphones are landlines that can be found in public places.
 C. People could not take landlines with them when they left their homes.
 D. People put coins into a slot in the pay phone to make a call.
4. What might be a reason that cell phones were invented?
- A. People wanted to be able to make calls from their homes or offices.
B. People wanted to be able to make calls away from home without finding a pay phone
 C. People wanted to be able to speak to one another when they were apart.
 D. People wanted to be able to speak and see each other from far distance.
5. What is the main idea of this article?
- A. Telephones are used to keep people apart as much as possible
 B. Cell phones are much less useful than landlines and pay phones.
 C. Landlines and pay phones still play an important part in world nowadays.
D. Telephones have been used for many years, and they have changed a lot over time.

XI. Read the text, and match the headings (A-F) with paragraphs (1-5). There is one extra heading that you do not need.

- A – Why do “friends” websites seem dangerous?*
B – How do “friends” websites work?
C – What’s the best advice for people who want to use “friends” websites?
D – Where do Millie’s friends live?
E – How can I find “friends” websites?
F – Why are “friends” websites popular?

1. **D** Millie is 14 years old and lives in Miami. She has 204 friends – and she makes two or three more friends every week. About 20 of her friends also live in Miami. Some go to the same school, and others go to the same music clubs and sports centers. She often sees them. The others live in other cities and other countries: England, Canada, Japan ... She never meets these friends, but she talks to them on the Internet. They are her “MySpace Friends”.
2. **B** Because of websites like MySpace, Yahoo 360 and Bebo, people can make friends online. These websites are very popular all over the world, especially with young people. Users have their own homepage. They give information about themselves. They write letters for their webpage, show photos and give opinions. They write about their favourite films, music and TV programmes.
3. **F** For many young people, a good homepage is an important part of their image. It says: “This is me! I have something to say. These things – and these people – are important in my

life.” And these websites are also an easy way to talk to a lot of different people. That is why teenagers like these “friends” websites.

4. **A** But some people are worried that these websites aren’t safe. For example, it is impossible to know that the information on a homepage is true. Perhaps the 14-year-old girl you talk to online is really a 40-year-old man. So here is some advice.

5. **C** Keep your webpage private. (only friends can see a private homepage). Do not put photos of yourself on your homepage. Do not meet people that you only know because of the website. And finally, remember that online friends are fun, but they are not the same as real friends.

XII. Use the words given and other words, complete the second sentence so that it has a similar meaning to the first sentence. Do not change the word given. (Use 2 – 5 words in total)

1. Don’t miss seeing the Opera House when you are in Sydney.

forget Don’t **forget to see** the Opera House when you are in Sydney.

2. There will be a discussion about the possibility of using video chatting at this time next week.

discussing They **will be discussing** the possibility of using video chatting at this time next week.

3. It’s a pity I don’t have a smart phone now.

wish I **wish I had** a smart phone now.

4. Landline telephones are predicted not to be used in 2030.

using People **won’t be using** landline telephones in 2030.

5. I don’t feel like chatting online at the moment.

prefer I’d **prefer not to chat online** at the moment.

XIII. Use the suggestions below to write a paragraph of around 150 – 170 words about the advantages of emails.

Topic sentence: Introduction of emails: email (electronic mail); 1st emails: 1960s

Supporting idea 1: Fast (deliver at once; not have to wait for days to get a response/answer)

Supporting idea 2: Simple and informal language (write and send emails quickly, not have to spend too much time choosing vocabulary and grammar)

Supporting idea 3: Environment-friendly (not use paper, save trees)

Supporting idea 4: Can have pictures (send birthday cards, newsletters)

Concluding sentence: a quick, easy way to stay in touch with family, friends; important part in modern lives.

XII. (Suggested answer)

Email is a short word for electronic mail. You create texts and send them over a network of computers. The first emails go back to the 1960s. The invention has influenced our lives and emails have become a popular means of communication. There are many advantages of emails. Firstly, emails are fast. They are delivered at once around the world and you don't have to wait for days to get a response or answer. Secondly, the language used in emails is simple and informal. You can write and send an email quickly without spending too much time thinking about the choice of vocabulary and grammatical structures. Thirdly, emails are environment-friendly. They do not use paper, so they save a lot of trees from being cut down. Finally, emails can also have pictures in them. You can send birthday cards or newsletters as emails. In conclusion, emails are a quick and easy way to stay in touch with family and friends, and they play an important part in our modern lives. (170 words)

TEST (COMMUNICATION (UNIT 10))

I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|--------------|---------------|
| 1. A. charity | B. reality | C. quality | D. density |
| 2. A. curiosity | B. personality | C. community | D. university |

- | | | | |
|-------------------|--------------|--------------|---------------|
| 3. A. additive | B. positive | C. primitive | D. possessive |
| 4. A. nationality | B. mobility | C. equality | D. majority |
| 5. A. transitive | B. effective | C. positive | D. sensitive |

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences

- A study shows that teenagers use text messaging to communicate with their friends more than _____.
A. to send email B. to write letters C. emailing D. texting
- The _____ communication services, along with chat rooms, continue to be an important part of children's online interactions.
A. online B. offline C. direct D. phone
- Email _____ are often necessary to join social networking sites, online games and virtual worlds.
A. address B. information C. senders D. accounts
- Email, and chat rooms let children _____ with friends and family members.
A. talk B. say C. speak D. communicate
- Skype is a voice _____ allowing users to talk to others across the world
A. hardware B. software application C. Internet access D. web browser
- Luckily, there are many communication techniques to help overcome _____.
A. foreign languages B. culture shocks C. language barriers D. sound barriers
- A non-native speaker most likely can recognize the _____ - the non-verbal communication.
A. second language B. official language C. sign language D. body language
- The facial expression for happiness, sadness, anger, surprise, fear, and disgust are the same across _____.
A. languages B. cultures C. habits D. people
- Seven of 10 people prefer face-to-face _____ when having a date.
A. code B. sign C. language D. contact
- We should not _____ password with anyone.
A. share B. send C. bring D. lend

III. Put the verbs in brackets in Past continuous, Present continuous or Future continuous to complete the sentences

- This time tomorrow I (chat) _____ with my cousin in Sydney on Skype.
- When I (call) _____ you this morning, my mobile phone was dead.
- We (have) _____ a video conference at the moment.
- People (not send) _____ snail mail any more in 2040.
- They (use) _____ signs to communicate with each other at this time yesterday.
- My brother (not work) _____ in the field of communication now.
- "I (not text) _____ you at 11p.m last Sunday", said Peter.
- Mr. Nam (deliver) _____ a speech at the National University at 10.30 a.m. next Wednesday.

9. I (get)_____ a lot of emails from customers these days.
 10. We (communicate)_____ by using social media in five days' time.

IV. Use the verbs from the box into V-infinitive or V-ing to complete sentences

call	chat	create	keep	make
meet	post	send	use	work

- I've decided_____ a new Skype account.
- Would you mind_____ me your home address, Mrs. Taylor?
- Mr.Lam would prefer_____ landline phones for personal calls.
- I've tried_____ her many times, but there have been no answers.
- Avoid_____ personal information on Facebook
- I'd like_____ a call from my Gmail account.
- My brother dislikes_____ about politics and religions
- They planned_____ in touch with each other by using emails.
- We don't like video chatting. We enjoy_____ F2F.
- Tom agreed_____ us at Galaxy Nguyen Du.

V. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Email, and chat rooms let children communicate (1)_____ friends and family members. They can also allow children to connect with people that they have never (2)_____ in person. Knowing a little about each of these communication services can help parents (3)_____ children safer while online.

Through e-mail, (4)_____ can easily send and receive messages. These messages may also have text, audio, and picture files attached. Signing up for an email account is simple (5)_____ most services offer them for free. Sometimes these messages contain viruses, or other inappropriate content, so parents should warn children to be wary of email from (6)_____ people.

Chat rooms are online hang-out spots where anyone can talk about (7)_____ - current events, books, and other common interests. Users often do not know each other in real life, so it is important that parents keep a close eye on the content of any (8)_____.

- A. to B. with C. for D. through
- A. met B. gone C. asked D. called
- A. save B. protect C. surround D. keep
- A. receivers B. messengers C. users D. partners
- A. due to B. because C. because of D. so
- A. known B. well-known C. unknown D. unpopular
- A. every B. something C. nothing D. anything
- A. conversations B. meetings C. letters D. users

VI. Read the article and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F)

Telepathy is the ability to communicate information using your mind. Information is transmitted from one mind to another using means other than your well-known perceptual senses. Telepathy

ranges from the basic reading of minds to more intense power, such as implanting or disrupting thoughts in other people's minds.

There are a few common reasons why someone becomes telepathic. For example, there are those who are simply born with a sense of knowing. These people talk about seeing spirits. But they tend to suppress their abilities as children and often lose it as adults. Alternatively, a life-changing event may open them up to being telepathic and exploring their gift even further. Also, there are times when a near-death experience or serious accident can also open someone up and cause a telepathic awakening. And in some cases, hypnosis or healing sessions can help a sixth sense to awaken. Such sessions help with getting energy flowing and causing a shift in awareness and consciousness.

1. Telepathy is the ability to communicate information using normal senses _____
2. Telepathy can be found in several forms _____
3. People who often talk about seeing spirits may be telepathic _____
4. Some people may not recognize and develop their telepathic abilities, so they lose these skills. _____
5. A near-death experience or serious accident can make a person become telepathic _____
6. We can awaken telepathy by making energy flowing and causing a shift between awareness and sleep _____

VII. Read the text, and do the following tasks

Mind-blowing facts about modern communication

The Internet holds about 5 million terabytes of data. That's about the same as 1 million human brains. According to experts, there are about 2 billion Internet users in the world. 70% of people in developed countries go online, but only 20% of people in developing countries can access to the Internet.

The average Internet user has 25 online accounts and logs in 8 times a day. 30% of Internet users have just 1 password for all their online accounts, and the most common password is "password1". About 55% of users choose words which have some personal meaning, and 15% write down both their password and username.

Many people use Wi-Fi hotspots in public places, such as café, airports and hotels. 46% of them are worried about viruses and hackers. Many people type in personal information while using public Wi-Fi: 22% regularly type in email passwords, 21% log onto Facebook and 8% do online banking, but they are unaware about how to be totally secure.

The first computer virus appeared in 1981. The first virus to affect mobile phones appeared in 2005. And the first anti-virus software came out in 1990. There are now about 6,000 new computer viruses every month.

87% of Internet users go online with their smartphone at least once a day. About 80% keep their smartphone turned on 24-7 and 23% use it during mealtimes.

500,000,000 people in the world have a Facebook account – that's about one in every 13 people. The average user has 130 "friends", and 48% of adults check their Facebook page as

soon as they wake up in the morning. Every 20 minutes, Facebook users around the world upload 2,716,000 photos.

Note: *mind-blowing* (adj) = extremely exciting or surprising (làm cho mê mẩn, sửng sò)

Task 1: Choose the best answers:

1. How many Internet users are there in the world?

A. half a billion

B. one billion

C. two billion

2. How many new computer viruses are there every month?

A. 60

B. 600

C. 6,000

3. How many people in the world have a Facebook account?

A. 500,000

B. 5,000,000

C. 500,000,000

Task 2: Match the sentence halves and write the answer in each blank

1. One in five people	A. have their phone on all day, every day.
2. About one third of people	B. have a Facebook account
3. 22 percent of people	C. use their mobile phones while they're eating a meal
4. In 2005,	D. have access to the Internet in developing countries
5. 500 million people	E. type in their email password on a public computer
6. Four in five people	F. the first mobile phone virus appeared
7. 23 percent of people	G. have only one password for all their online accounts

Task 3: Match a word/phrase in column A with its definition in column B, and write the answer in each blank

A	B
1. access to the Internet	A. a programme that inserts itself into a computer system and damage the operation of the computer
2. Internet user	B. a secret word that you must type in order to use a computer system
3. online account	C. a programme used to protect the main memory of a computer against a virus
4. password	D. an arrangement that a person has with a company to allow him to use the Internet
5. username	E. the range of a wireless (Wi-Fi) network
6. Wi-Fi hotspots	F. the chance or right to use the Internet
7. hacker	G. a person using a computer to change information stored on another computer.
8. virus	H. copy programmes or information to the Internet
9. anti-virus software	I. a person that uses the Internet
10. upload	J. A name that you need to type in together with a password before you are allow to use the computer or the Internet

VIII. Rewrite the following sentences so that their meaning stays the same, using the word given

1. Barbara isn't trying to solve her financial problems. (*effort*)

Barbara is _____

2. Anna feels sad because Fred ignored her needs in several months. (*caring*)

Anna thinks _____

3. When we get together, everybody talks a lot, freely and cheerfully. (*enjoy*)

Members _____

4. Anna is always very quiet with her husband's family. Everybody thought she was acting superior to them. (*different*)

Anna _____

5. Fred always feels uncomfortable because everyone in Anna's family is so quiet. (*the way*)

Fred feels _____

IX. Write an email to your teacher about missing assignment, using the clues given.

Dear Teacher

1. My name / Hoang Diem My / I / your student / class 8A.

2. I / would like / express my appreciation / all your efforts / teaching chemistry / our class

3. I / write / this letter / apologize / not submit / my lab report / on time.

4. I / sorry / forget / the deadline / the report / due last week.

5. I / promise / this thing / not happen again.

6. I / hope for / kind understanding / and accept / late submission.

Best regards,

Hoang Diem My

KEY TEST (COMMUNICATION (UNIT 10))

I. Choose the word which has a different stress pattern from the others

- | | | | |
|--------------------------|---------------------|---------------------|----------------------|
| 1. A. charity | B. reality | C. quality | D. density |
| 2. A. curiosity | B. personality | C. community | D. university |
| 3. A. additive | B. positive | C. primitive | D. possessive |
| 4. A. nationality | B. mobility | C. equality | D. majority |
| 5. A. transitive | B. effective | C. positive | D. sensitive |

II. Choose the best answer A, B, C or D to complete the sentences

1. A study shows that teenagers use text messaging to communicate with their friends more than _____.
- | | | | |
|------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------|
| A. to send email | B. to write letters | C. emailing | D. texting |
|------------------|---------------------|--------------------|------------|
2. The _____ communication services, along with chat rooms, continue to be an important part of children's online interactions.
- | | | | |
|------------------|------------|-----------|----------|
| A. online | B. offline | C. direct | D. phone |
|------------------|------------|-----------|----------|
3. Email _____ are often necessary to join social networking sites, online games and virtual worlds.
- | | | | |
|------------|----------------|------------|--------------------|
| A. address | B. information | C. senders | D. accounts |
|------------|----------------|------------|--------------------|

4. Email, and chat rooms let children _____ with friends and family members.
A. talk B. say C. speak **D. communicate**
5. Skype is a voice _____ allowing users to talk to others across the world
A. hardware **B. software application** C. Internet access D. web browser
6. Luckily, there are many communication techniques to help overcome _____.
A. foreign languages B. culture shocks **C. language barriers** D. sound barriers
7. A non-native speaker most likely can recognize the _____ - the non-verbal communication.
A. second language B. official language C. sign language **D. body language**
8. The facial expression for happiness, sadness, anger, surprise, fear, and disgust are the same across _____.
A. languages **B. cultures** C. habits D. people
9. Seven of 10 people prefer face-to-face _____ when having a date.
A. code B. sign C. language **D. contact**
10. We should not _____ password with anyone.
A. share B. send C. bring D. lend

III. Put the verbs in brackets in Past continuous, Present continuous or Future continuous to complete the sentences

1. This time tomorrow I (chat) **will be chatting** with my cousin in Sydney on Skype.
2. When I (call) **was calling** you this morning, my mobile phone was dead.
3. We (have) **are having** a video conference at the moment.
4. People (not send) **won't be sending** snail mail any more in 2040.
5. They (use) **were using** signs to communicate with each other at this time yesterday.
6. My brother (not work) **isn't working** in the field of communication now.
7. "I (not text) **wasn't texting** you at 11p.m last Sunday", said Peter.
8. Mr. Nam (deliver) **will be delivering** a speech at the National University at 10.30 a.m. next Wednesday.
9. I (get) **am getting** a lot of emails from customers these days.
10. We (communicate) **will be communicating** by using social media in five days' time.

IV. Use the verbs from the box into V-infinitive or V-ing to complete sentences

call	chat	create	keep	make
meet	post	send	use	work

1. I've decided **to create** a new Skype account.
2. Would you mind **sending** me your home address, Mrs. Taylor?
3. Mr.Lam would prefer **to use** landline phones for personal calls.
4. I've tried **to call** her many times, but there have been no answers.
5. Avoid **posting** personal information on Facebook
6. I'd like **to make** a call from my Gmail account.
7. My brother dislikes **chatting** about politics and religions
8. They planned **to keep** in touch with each other by using emails.

9. We don't like video chatting. We enjoy **working** F2F.

10. Tom agreed **to meet** us at Galaxy Nguyen Du.

V. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Email, and chat rooms let children communicate (1)_____ friends and family members. They can also allow children to connect with people that they have never (2)_____ in person. Knowing a little about each of these communication services can help parents (3)_____ children safer while online.

Through e-mail, (4)_____ can easily send and receive messages. These messages may also have text, audio, and picture files attached. Signing up for an email account is simple (5)_____ most services offer them for free. Sometimes these messages contain viruses, or other inappropriate content, so parents should warn children to be wary of email from (6)_____ people.

Chat rooms are online hang-out spots where anyone can talk about (7)_____ - current events, books, and other common interests. Users often do not know each other in real life, so it is important that parents keep a close eye on the content of any (8)_____.

- | | | | |
|----------------------------|-------------------|-------------------|--------------------|
| 1. A. to | B. with | C. for | D. through |
| 2. A. met | B. gone | C. asked | D. called |
| 3. A. save | B. protect | C. surround | D. keep |
| 4. A. receivers | B. messengers | C. users | D. partners |
| 5. A. due to | B. because | C. because of | D. so |
| 6. A. known | B. well-known | C. unknown | D. unpopular |
| 7. A. every | B. something | C. nothing | D. anything |
| 8. A. conversations | B. meetings | C. letters | D. users |

VI. Read the article and then decide whether the statements are true (T) or false (F)

Telepathy is the ability to communicate information using your mind. Information is transmitted from one mind to another using means other than your well-known perceptual senses. Telepathy ranges from the basic reading of minds to more intense power, such as implanting or disrupting thoughts in other people's minds.

There are a few common reasons why someone becomes telepathic. For example, there are those who are simply born with a sense of knowing. These people talk about seeing spirits. But they tend to suppress their abilities as children and often lose it as adults. Alternatively, a life-changing event may open them up to being telepathic and exploring their gift even further.

Also, there are times when a near-death experience or serious accident can also open someone up and cause a telepathic awakening. And in some cases, hypnosis or healing sessions can help a sixth sense to awaken. Such sessions help with getting energy flowing and causing a shift in awareness and consciousness.

1. Telepathy is the ability to communicate information using normal senses__ **F**

2. Telepathy can be found in several forms__ **T**

3. People who often talk about seeing spirits may be telepathic__ **T**

4. Some people may not recognize and develop their telepathic abilities, so they lose these skills. **T**
5. A near-death experience or serious accident can make a person become telepathic **F**
6. We can awaken telepathy by making energy flowing and causing a shift between awareness and sleep **F**

VII. Read the text, and do the following tasks

Mind-blowing facts about modern communication

The Internet holds about 5 million terabytes of data. That's about the same as 1 million human brains. According to experts, there are about 2 billion Internet users in the world. 70% of people in developed countries go online, but only 20% of people in developing countries can access to the Internet.

The average Internet user has 25 online accounts and logs in 8 times a day. 30% of Internet users have just 1 password for all their online accounts, and the most common password is "password1". About 55% of users choose words which have some personal meaning, and 15% write down both their password and username.

Many people use Wi-Fi hotspots in public places, such as café, airports and hotels. 46% of them are worried about viruses and hackers. Many people type in personal information while using public Wi-Fi: 22% regularly type in email passwords, 21% log onto Facebook and 8% do online banking, but they are unaware about how to be totally secure.

The first computer virus appeared in 1981. The first virus to affect mobile phones appeared in 2005. And the first anti-virus software came out in 1990. There are now about 6,000 new computer viruses every month.

87% of Internet users go online with their smartphone at least once a day. About 80% keep their smartphone turned on 24-7 and 23% use it during mealtimes.

500,000,000 people in the world have a Facebook account – that's about one in every 13 people. The average user has 130 "friends", and 48% of adults check their Facebook page as soon as they wake up in the morning. Every 20 minutes, Facebook users around the world upload 2,716,000 photos.

Note: *mind-blowing* (adj) = extremely exciting or surprising (làm cho mê mẩn, sững sờ)

Task 1: Choose the best answers:

1. How many Internet users are there in the world?
 A. half a billion B. one billion **C. two billion**
2. How many new computer viruses are there every month?
 A. 60 B. 600 **C. 6,000**
3. How many people in the world have a Facebook account?
 A. 500,000 B. 5,000,000 **C. 500,000,000**

Task 2: Match the sentence halves and write the answer in each blank

1. D 2. G 3. E 4. F 5. B 6. A 7. C

1. One in five people	A. have their phone on all day, every day.
2. About one third of people	B. have a Facebook account

3. 22 percent of people	C. use their mobile phones while they're eating a meal
4. In 2005,	D. have access to the Internet in developing countries
5. 500 million people	E. type in their email password on a public computer
6. Four in five people	F. the first mobile phone virus appeared
7. 23 percent of people	G. have only one password for all their online accounts

Task 3: Match a word/phrase in column A with its definition in column B, and write the answer in each blank

1.F 2.I 3.D 4.B 5.J 6.E 7.G 8.A 9.C
10.H

A	B
1. access to the Internet	A. a programme that inserts itself into a computer system and damage the operation of the computer
2. Internet user	B. a secret word that you must type in order to use a computer system
3. online account	C. a programme used to protect the main memory of a computer against a virus
4. password	D. an arrangement that a person has with a company to allow him to use the Internet
5. username	E. the range of a wireless (Wi-Fi) network
6. Wi-Fi hotspots	F. the chance or right to use the Internet
7. hacker	G. a person using a computer to change information stored on another computer.
8. virus	H. copy programmes or information to the Internet
9. anti-virus software	I. a person that uses the Internet
10. upload	J. A name that you need to type in together with a password before you are allow to use the computer or the Internet

VIII. Rewrite the following sentences so that their meaning stays the same, using the word given

1. Barbara isn't trying to solve her financial problems. (effort)

Barbara is **making no effort to solve her financial problems**

2. Anna feels sad because Fred ignored her needs in several months. (caring)

Anna thinks **that Fred stopped caring about her**

3. When we get together, everybody talks a lot, freely and cheerfully. (enjoy)

Members **in my family really enjoy conversation / meeting each other**

4. Anna is always very quiet with her husband's family. Every body thought she was acting superior to them. (different)

Anna **has different communication style from her husband's family**

5. Fred always feels uncomfortable because everyone in Anna's family is so quiet. (the way)

Fred feels **uncomfortable with the way that Anna's family communicates**

IX. Write an email to your teacher about missing assignment, using the clues given.

Dear Teacher

1. My name / Hoang Diem My / I / your student / class 8A.

My name is Hoang Diem My, and I am your student from class 8A

2. I / would like / express my appreciation / all your efforts / teaching chemistry / our class

I would like to express my appreciation for all your efforts in teaching chemistry to our class

3. I / write / this letter / apologize / not submit / my lab report / on time.

I write / am writing this letter to apologize for not submitting my lab report on time

4. I / sorry / forget / the deadline / the report / due last week.

I am sorry for forgetting the deadline of the report, due last week

5. I / promise / this thing / not happen again.

I promise that this thing does not happen again.

6. I / hope for / kind understanding / and accept / late submission.

I hope for your kind understanding, and accept my late submission

Best regards,

Hoang Diem My

SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY (UNIT 11)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Science (n)</i> <i>Scientist (n)</i> <i>Scientific (a)</i>	<i>/ˈsaɪəns/</i> <i>/ˈsaɪəntɪst/</i> <i>/ˌsaɪənˈtɪfɪk/</i>	Khoa học Nhà khoa học	<i>Advise(v)</i> <i>Advice (n)</i>	<i>/ədˈvaɪz/</i> <i>/ədˈvaɪs/</i>	Khuyến Lời khuyên
<i>Technology (n)</i> <i>Technological (a)</i>	<i>/tekˈnɒlədʒi/</i> <i>/ˌteknəˈlɒdʒɪkəl/</i>	Kỹ thuật, công nghệ	<i>Chemistry (n)</i> <i>Chemist (n)</i>	<i>/ˈkemɪstri/</i> <i>/ˈkemɪst/</i>	Hóa học Nhà hóa học
<i>Mean (v)</i> <i>Meaning (n)</i> <i>Meaningful (a)</i>	<i>/miːn/</i> <i>/ˈmiːnɪŋ/</i> <i>/ˈmiːnɪŋfl/</i>	Nghĩa là Ý nghĩa Đầy ý nghĩa	<i>Design (v) (n)</i> <i>Designer (n)</i>	<i>/dɪˈzaɪn/</i> <i>/dɪˈzaɪnə(r)/</i>	Thiết kế Nhà thiết kế
<i>Telecommunication (n)</i>	<i>/ˌtelɪkəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/</i>	Viễn thông	<i>Marine (a)</i>	<i>/məˈriːn/</i>	(thuộc) biển
<i>Enormous (a)</i>	<i>/ɪˈnɔːməs/</i>	To lớn	<i>Environment (n)</i> <i>Environmental (a)</i>	<i>/ɪnˈvaɪrənmənt/</i> <i>/ɪnˈvaɪrənˈmentl/</i>	Môi trường
<i>Robot (n)</i>	<i>/ˈrəʊbɒt/</i>	Rô bốt	<i>Physics (n)</i> <i>Physicist (n)</i>	<i>/ˈfɪzɪks/</i> <i>/ˈfɪzɪsɪst/</i>	Vật lý Nhà vật lý học
<i>Spaceship (n)</i>	<i>/ˈspeɪʃɪp/</i>	Tàu vũ	<i>Role (n)</i>	<i>/rəʊl/</i>	Vai trò

		trụ			
<i>Traffic jam (n)</i>	<i>/ˈtræfɪk dʒæm/</i>	Tắc đường	<i>Explore (v)</i> <i>Explorer (n)</i> <i>Exploration (n)</i>	<i>/ɪkˈsplɔː/</i> <i>/ɪkˈsplɔːrə(r)/</i> <i>/ˌekspləˈreɪʃn/</i>	Khám phá Nhà thám hiểm
<i>Field (n)</i>	<i>/fiːld/</i>	Lĩnh vực	<i>Archeology (n)</i> <i>Archeologist (n)</i>	<i>/ˌɑːkiˈɒlədʒi/</i> <i>/ˌɑːkiˈɒlədʒɪst/</i>	Khảo cổ học Nhà khảo cổ học
<i>Benefit (n) (v)</i>	<i>/ˈbenɪfɪt/</i>	Lợi ích, hưởng lợi	<i>Develop (v)</i> <i>Development (n)</i> <i>Developer (n)</i>	<i>/dɪˈveləp/</i> <i>/dɪˈveləpmənt/</i> <i>/dɪˈveləpə(r)/</i>	Phát triển
<i>Education (n)</i> <i>Educational (a)</i>	<i>/ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃn/</i> <i>/ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃənl/</i>	Giáo dục	<i>Medicine (n)</i> <i>Medical (a)</i>	<i>/ˈmedsn/</i> <i>/ˈmedɪkl/</i>	Y học, thuốc
<i>Happen (v)</i>	<i>/ˈhæpən/</i>	Xảy ra	<i>Mature (a)</i> <i>Maturity (n)</i>	<i>/məˈtʃʊə(r)/</i> <i>/məˈtʃʊərəti/</i>	Trưởng thành, chín
<i>Progress (n)</i>	<i>/ˈprəʊɡres/</i>	Sự tiến bộ	<i>Foresee (v)</i> <i>Foreseen (a)</i>	<i>/fɔːˈsiː/</i>	Đoán trước, thấy trước
<i>Solve (v)</i> <i>Solution (n)</i>	<i>/sɒlv/</i>	Giải quyết	<i>Patient (a)</i> <i>Patience (n)</i>	<i>/ˈpeɪjnt/</i> <i>/ˈpeɪjns/</i>	Kiên nhẫn
<i>Yield (n)</i>	<i>/jiːld/</i>	Sản lượng	<i>Pure (a)</i>	<i>/pjʊə(r)/</i>	Nguyên chất, tinh khiết
<i>Decade (n)</i>	<i>/ˈdekeɪd/</i> <i>/dɪˈkeɪd/</i>	Thập kỷ	<i>Nature (n)</i> <i>Natural (a)</i>	<i>/ˈneɪtʃə(r)/</i> <i>/ˈnætʃrəl/</i>	Thiên nhiên
<i>Succeed (v)</i> <i>Success (n)</i> <i>Successful (a)</i>	<i>/səkˈsiːd/</i> <i>/səkˈses/</i> <i>/səkˈsesfl/</i>	Thành công	<i>Health (n)</i> <i>Healthy (a)</i>	<i>/helθ/</i> <i>/ˈhelθi/</i>	Sức khỏe Lành mạnh
<i>Technique (n)</i> <i>Technical (a)</i>	<i>/tekˈniːk/</i> <i>/ˈteknɪkl/</i>	Thủ thuật, kĩ thuật	<i>Polite (a)</i> <i>Impolite (a)</i>	<i>/pəˈlaɪt/</i> <i>/ˌɪmpəˈlaɪt/</i>	Lịch sự Bất lịch sự
<i>Research (n)</i> <i>Researcher (n)</i>	<i>/rɪˈsɜːtʃ/</i> <i>/rɪˈsɜːtʃə(r)/</i>	Nghiên cứu Nhà nghiên cứu	<i>Underground (adj, adv)</i>	<i>/ʌndəˈgraʊnd/</i>	dưới lòng đất, ngầm
<i>Advance (n)</i>	<i>/ədˈvɑːns/</i>	Sự tiến bộ	<i>Experiment (n)</i>	<i>/ɪkˈsperɪmənt/</i>	Thí nghiệm
<i>Improve (v)</i> <i>Improvement (n)</i>	<i>/ɪmˈpruːv/</i> <i>/ɪmˈpruːvmənt/</i>	Nâng cao, cải thiện	<i>Diet (n)</i>	<i>/ˈdaɪət/</i>	Chế độ ăn uống
<i>Aspect (n)</i>	<i>/ˈæspekt/</i>	Khía	<i>Disease (n)</i>	<i>/dɪˈziːz/</i>	Bệnh tật

		cạnh, lĩnh vực			
<i>Invent (v)</i> <i>Invention (n)</i> <i>Inventor (n)</i>	/ɪnˈvent/ /ɪnˈvenʃn/ /ɪnˈventə(r)/	Phát minh ra Nhà phát minh	<i>Identify (v)</i>	/aɪˈdentɪfaɪ/	Nhận biết, nhận ra
<i>Transorm (v)</i> <i>Transformation (n)</i>	/trænsˈfɔ:m/ /ˌtrænsfəˈmeɪʃn/	Thay đổi, biến đổi	<i>Support (v) (n)</i>	/səˈpɔ:t/	Ủng hộ
<i>Insect (n)</i>	/ˈɪnsekt/	Sâu bọ, côn trùng	<i>Replace (v)</i> <i>Replacement (n)</i>	/rɪˈpleɪs/ /rɪˈpleɪsmənt/	Thay thế
<i>Biology (n)</i> <i>Biologist (n)</i>	/baɪˈɒlədʒi/ /baɪˈɒlədʒɪst/	Sinh học Nhà sinh vật học	<i>Probably (adv)</i>	/ˈprɒbəbli/	Hầu như chắc chắn
<i>Realistic (a)</i> <i>Reality (n)</i> <i>Become a reality</i>	/ˌriːəˈlɪstɪk/ /riˈæləti/ /bɪˈkʌm əriˈæliti/	Hiện thực, thực tế Trở thành hiện thực	<i>Oversleep (v)</i>	/ˌəʊvəˈsli:p/	Ngủ quên
<i>Accurate (a)</i> <i>Accuracy (n)</i>	/ˈækjərət/ /ˈækjərəsi/	Chính xác	<i>Steam engine (n)</i>	/sti:m ˈendʒɪn/	Đầu máy hơi nước
<i>Measure (v)</i> <i>Measurement (n)</i>	/ˈmeʒə(r)/ /ˈmeʒəmənt/	Đo, đo lượng Phép đo, số đo	<i>Transport (v)</i> <i>Transtportation (n)</i>	/ˈtrænsˌpɔ:t/ /ˌtrænsˌpɔ:ˈteɪʃn/	Chuyên chở, vận tải
<i>Pollute (v)</i> <i>Polluted (a)</i> <i>Pollution (n)</i>	/pəˈlu:t/ /pəˈlu:ʃn/	Ô nhiễm	<i>Mistake (n)</i> <i>Make a mistake</i>	/mɪˈsteɪk/	Lỗi, sai lầm Mắc lỗi
<i>Cure (v)</i>	/kjʊə/	Chữa khỏi	<i>Discover (v)</i> <i>Discovery (n)</i>	/dɪˈskʌvə/ /dɪˈskʌvəri/	Phát hiện ra
<i>Light bulb (n)</i>	/laɪt ɒlb/	Bóng đèn	<i>Patent (n, v)</i>	/ˈpætnt/	bằng sáng chế, được cấp bằngsáng chế
<i>Precise (adj)</i>	/priˈsaɪs/	Chính xác	<i>Quality (n)</i>	/ˈkwɒləti/	Chất lượng

II. Grammar: Future tenses – Review

Reported speech

III. Pronunciation: Stress in words starting with un- and im-

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|---------------|----------------|
| 1. A. impair | B. unhurt | C. effect | D. insect |
| 2. A. explorer | B. accurate | C. unhealthy | D. immature |
| 3. A. unnatural | B. engineering | C. impossible | D. environment |
| 4. A. unhelpful | B. unlikely | C. unforeseen | D. unusual |
| 5. A. imprecise | B. imperfect | C. impartial | D. impassive |

II. Write the opposite of these words, using *un-* or *im-*, and then read the words aloud.

- | | |
|------------------------|-------------------------|
| 1. Attractive
_____ | 6. Pleasant
_____ |
| 2. Polite
_____ | 7. Competitive
_____ |
| 3. Pratical
_____ | 8. Lucky
_____ |
| 4. Natural
_____ | 9. Necessary
_____ |
| 5. Official
_____ | 10. Proper
_____ |

III. Complete the following sentences with nouns indicating people.

1. A person who paints or draws is a/an_____.
2. A person who writes novels is a/an_____.
3. A person who is starting to learn something for the first time is a/an_____.
4. A person who is in your family who lived a long time before is a/an_____.
5. A person who plays the piano is a/an_____.

IV. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. There is still room for_____in your work.
2. Today scientific proress is mostly defined in terms of_____advancements.
3. The first experiment was_____, so we need to do another one.
4. A_____is a scientist who studies the solid and liquid matter that constitutes the Earth.
5. The US, _____ of the Moon began with the Ranger 4 impactor in 1962.
6. A nuclear power reactor _____ could provide assistance with the loading and unloading of nuclear fuel.
7. The study points out that many peopl's health has been affected from bathing in or drinking _____water.
8. Thousands of _____are used in everday products – in our water, our food and in the air we breathe.

Impro
Technolo

Succes
Geolo

Explo

Opera

Pu

Chemist

9. _____ in Japan have found that human ageing may be able to be delayed or even reversed.
10. Here are several _____ proven studies that describe how to keep fit.

Research

Science

V. Find one word that does not belong to each group.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|----------------|-----------------|----------------|
| 1. A. developer | B. researcher | C. cooker | D. technician |
| 2. A. explore | B. communicate | C. disagree | D. biologist |
| 3. A. physics | B. economic | C. technical | D. enormous |
| 4. A. zoology | B. apology | C. anthropology | D. archaeology |
| 5. A. unchanged | B. unaware | C. unsure | D. uncle |

VI. Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete each of the following sentences.

- If the teacher were here now, we'd ask him the difference _____ "science" and "technology".
 - Among
 - Of
 - Between
 - for
- She needs to work on her interview _____ if she wants to get the job.
 - Technique
 - Technology
 - Technological
 - technician
- The teacher _____ me that I had better devote more time to science subjects such as physics, chemistry and biology.
 - Said
 - Talked
 - Spoke
 - told
- Science is used in all corners of the world for the _____ of people.
 - Interest
 - Need
 - Profits
 - benefit
- Artificial intelligence (AI) is an area of _____ concerned with making computers copy intelligent human behaviour.
 - Learning
 - Study
 - Lesson
 - invention
- The protection of technologies and technological information has become _____ for many nations.
 - The importance of a concern
 - A concern of important
 - The importance concerning
 - an important concern
- If you _____ something, you should patent it as quickly as possible.
 - Invented
 - Will invent
 - Have invented
 - are inventing
- The new invention could have a wide range of _____ in industry.
 - Applications
 - Concerns
 - Goodness
 - advance

VII. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets to finish the sentences.

She told me that

3. "I will hand in my assignment to the teacher tomorrow."

She _____ said

.....

4. "The film will begin at seven o'clock."

They _____ announced _____ that

.....

5. "We have never seen this species of lizard before."

Biologists _____ said _____ that

.....

6. "Cloning will become more popular in the next century."

The _____ scientist _____ said _____ that

.....

7. "Every home will have at least one robot to perform any boring task."

Dr _____ Nelson _____ said _____ that

.....

8. "Parents do not allow children to play computer games for a long period of time."

The _____ teacher _____ told _____ us _____ that

.....

9. "Nuclear power plants don't require a lot of space."

The _____ physicist _____ said _____ that

.....

10. "Wrong decisions in Chernobyl caused a big nuclear explosion."

The _____ politician _____ told _____ the _____ audience _____ that

.....

IX. Rewrite the following sentences in direct speech.

1. Viet said that he would be doing an experiment at 10 o'clock the following day.

.....

2. Mr. Quang told me that they hadn't been at the Young Inventors Club the night before.

.....

3. She told me that I could try it then if I liked.

.....
.....
4. He said that he was going to hire a robot the following Saturday.
.....
.....

5. Mary told me that her parents didn't want her to participate in that project.
.....
.....

6. They said that they wouldn't send people to the moon the following year.
.....
.....

7. Mr. Smith told me that he had worked with my father for 10 year.
.....
.....

8. Lucia said that they weren't going to the cinema that night.
.....
.....

9. Bob said that he had been a flying saucer the previous evening.
.....
.....

10. Dr. Nelson said that their students had been studying Astronomy at 3p.m the day before.
.....
.....

X. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Computers are helpful (1)_____many ways. First, they are fast. They can work with information even (2)_____quickly than a person. Second, computers can work with a lot of information at the same time. Third, they can (3)_____information for a long time. They do not forget things that the common people do. (4)_____, computers are almost always correct. They are not perfect, but they usually do not (5)_____mistakes.

Recently, it is important (6)_____about computers. There are a number of things to learn. Some companies have (7)_____at work. In addition, most universities (8)_____day and night courses in Computer Science. Another way to learn is from a bok, or from a friend. After a few hours of practice, you can (9)_____ with computers. You may not be an expert, but can have (10)_____.

- | | | | |
|---------------|-------------|--------------|----------|
| 1. A. in | B. on | C. at | D. over |
| 2. A. much | B. rather | C. more | D. less |
| 3. A. hold | B. carry | C. stay | D. keep |
| 4. A. However | B. Moreover | C. Therefore | D. |
| Nevertheless | | | |
| 5. A. do | B. make | C. have | D. take |
| 6. A. know | B. knowing | C. to know | D. knew |
| 7. A. classes | B. meetings | C. schools | D. |
| discussions | | | |
| 8. A. send | B. offer | C. bring | D. spend |
| 9. A. use | B. make | C. work | D. take |
| 10. A. fun | B. funny | C. enjoy | D. for |
| fun | | | |

XI. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Inventions That Changes Our World

People have been inventing things for years. Paper was invented about 2,000 years ago. The wheel was invented more than 5,000 years ago. What would life be like without paper to write on or bikes to ride? Those inventions have made life easier.

Airplane

The Wright Brothers invented the first airplane in December 1903. That makes 2003 the 100th **anniversary**! Before the airplane was invented, most people traveled bycars, boats, and trains. Today, airplanes help people travel faster. How do airplanes help you?

Telephone

Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876. Before the telephone was invented, people kept in touch by writing letters or talking in person. Today the telephone makes it easier for people to talk to one another. How do telephones help you?

Automobile

The first four-wheeled gas-powered car was invented by Karl Benz in 1891. Before people had cars, they couldn't travel easily. They walked or rode horses for short trips. They took trains or boat for long trips. Today cars are one of the main ways people travel. How do cars help you?

Computer

People worked for years to make the first computer. It was built in 1946. The first computer was called ENIAC. Today computers are an important part of many people's lives. People use computers as tools to write, get information, and much more. How do computers help you?

1. Which of the following are two inventions in the passage that were invented before 1900?
 - a. The telephone and the car
 - b. The car and the computer
 - c. The computer and the airplane
 - d. The airplane and the telephone
2. What do all the inventions described in this text have in common?
 - a. All these inventions were invented in the twentieth century.
 - b. All these inventions were invented by Americans.
 - c. All these inventions made people's lives easier.
 - d. All these inventions changed how people travel.
3. It can be inferred from the passage that _____.
 - a. The Wright Brothers spent a long time trying to invent the airplane.
 - b. Someone had the idea to invent the computer in the 1940s or early 1950s.
 - c. Karl benz didn't like to walk or ride horses for short trips.
 - d. Alexander Graham Bell wrote many letters in his lifetime.
4. What does the word **anniversary** in the second paragraph most nearly mean?
 - a. An interesting idea
 - b. An event
 - c. a statement of fact
 - d. a celebrated date
5. The primary purpose of this passage is to describe _____.
 - a. The invention of the airplane in December 1903.
 - b. Some inventions that have made a big difference.
 - c. Some ways that computers help make our lives easier.
 - d. The reasons that Karl Benz invented the gas-powered car.

XII. Write a paragraph of about 100 words on the following topic.

Do you agree or disagree with the following idea?

The invention of computer games causes a lot of problems for children.

You can refer to the following factors:

- Time (wasting or not wasting)
- Health (negative or positive effect)
- Brain (negative or positive effect)

TEST (Unit 11)

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

1. A. allowow B. followow C. yellowow D. fellowow
2. A. exhaustu B. hour C. honest D. house
3. A. mood B. moon C. soon D. good
4. A. Dutch B. Russian C. just D. use
5. A. descent B. Dissent C. discontent D. continentent

II. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the others.

1. A. consequently B. advantage C. apologise D. complain
2. A. relationship B. arrangement C. challenging D. eliminate
3. A. Prescription B. profession C. mechanic D. calculate
4. A. Japanese B. English C. Indian D. American
5. A. emphasize B. equipment C. improvement D. distinguish

B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

I. Turn the adverb of time in the box into indirect speech.

Direct speech	Indirect speech/ reported speech
Tomorrow	
Next Sunday	
In two weeks	
Today	
Yesterday	
Yesterday evening	

The day before yesterday	
Two days ago	
Next week	
Last week	
Now	
Here	
This (morning)	

II. Choose the correct option A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

- Lien told me that _____ a biology teacher.
 - She wants to become
 - she wanted to become
 - she will become
 - she wanted becoming
- We reminded Lily _____ late for our appointment the next day.
 - To be not
 - Not to be
 - to don't be
 - don't be
- My sister asked _____ the dress for me?
 - You used to buy
 - You would buy
 - will you buy
 - you buy
- "_____ for a cup of tea?" I asked my friends.
 - We will meet
 - We are meeting
 - We shall meet
 - Shall we meet
- My mother asked Lorie _____ in her tests.
 - If she will do well
 - Whether she did not do well
 - Why did she not do well
 - Why she did not do well
- We advised Sue not to be a spend thrift and that she _____ more money.
 - Not to save
 - Was saving
 - Should save
 - Not save

- III. Fill each blank with a suitable word in the box to complete the passage.**

Nowadays a lot of important inventions (1)_____carried out by scientists (2)_____for large industrial firms. (3)_____there are still opportunities (4)_____other people to invent various things. In Britain, (5)_____is a weekly television program which attempts to show (6)_____the various devices which people have recently (7)_____. The people organizing the program receive (8)_____about 700 inventions a year. New ideas can still be developed (9)_____private inventors. However, it is important to consider these (10)_____. Will it work? Will it be wanted? Is it new?

I. Choose the correct tenses given in column A with suitable tenses in column B to make sure when you turn into reported speech.

(Direct speech)	(Indirect speech/ reported speech)
1. Present simple	a. Could

2. Present continuous	b. Past continuous
3. Present perfect	c. Had to
4. Past simple	d. Past perfect
5. Will	e. Would
6. Can	f. Past simple
7. May	g. Might
8. Must	

II. Read and choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

Bicycles

The bicycle is one of the simplest yet most useful inventions in the world. What is most surprising is that it was not (1)_____ earlier, although the great inventor Leonardo da Vinci had drawn picture for bicycle and also for flying machines and some other things. Those things were not produced (2) _____ long after he died.

A person riding a bicycle use (3)_____energy to make the bicycle move, and there is no pollution at all when you are riding. Even so in developed (4)-_____, most people don't travel to work by bicycle. It is not because the bicycles are expensive or people feel (5)_____if they ride to work. It's because (6)_____cars on the roads becomes larger. It certainly becomes (7) _____to ride a bicycle. As a result, more people put their bicycles away and go to work (8)_____their cars, and in this way, the situation is made more serious. (9)_____the best way to make riding safer and more popular is to create paths only for bicycle and to make (10)_____so difficult and expensive for drivers to their cars into the city that they will go back to use their bicycles.

- | | | | |
|-----------------|-------------------|-----------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. had | B. used | C. invented | D. ridden |
| 2. A. before | B. when | C. since | D. until |
| 3. A. much | B. quite a lot of | C. very little | D. many |
| 4. A. world | B. countries | C. land | D. earth |
| 5. A. lucky | B. glad | C. sorry | C. tired |
| 6. A. the | B. a number of | C. this kind of | D. all kinds of |
| | number of | | |
| 7. A. safe | B. more dangerous | C. much | D. popular |

- | | | | |
|--------------|----------|------------|-----------|
| 8. A. by | B. in | C. use | D. drive |
| 9. A. Hardly | B. Maybe | C. perhaps | D. Nearly |
| 10. A. it | B. them | C. us | D. that |

III. Read the passage and fill one suitable word in each blank.

The history of the computer in the twentieth century is one of dramatic adaption and expansion. The computer had modest beginnings in areas where it was (1)_____ as a specialist tool. The first electronic computer was built in the 1930s and was solely for use (2)_____ undergraduate students in Iowa State University to handle mathematical computations in nuclear physics. (3)_____ World War Two computers were developed in order to wage counter espionage and break codes used by the enemy. In the post-war years the scope of computers was expanded to include the military industrial complex and academia. Obviously people needed to (4)_____ around these institutions and so there was a need for early network tools. In the 1960's an early version of the Internet, ARPANET was used in computers were starting to change our lifestyle, the way we do business and many style things (Elliot, 1994) and by the late 1980's networks were expanding to embrace sections of the general public. The (5)_____ was born.

D. WRITING

I. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

- "I try to learn hard to pass the entrance exam."

Nam _____ said

- "Jane doesn't want to come to Bobby's party."

Mary _____ told

- "My daughter is writing a letter to her French friends now."

Jane's _____ mother _____ informed

- "Kate will be a good teacher in the future."

The _____ principal _____ hoped

- "We may go sightseeing in Sapa next week."

My friends told be

.....

II. Turn these sentences from reported speech into direct speech.

1. Albert Einstein stated that once you stop learning, you start dying.

.....
.....

2. Lan told me that she would go camping with her classmates the next day.

.....
.....

3. The scientists told us that in the near future, robots in our home would do all the housework for us.

.....
.....

4. I believed science and technology were the keys to develop in the society.

.....
.....

5. All of us knew that the way to the success was not easy.

.....
.....

III. There are five mistakes in ten underlined prepositions in this passage. Find out and correct them.

The man who made and lost a fortune manufacturing kitchen furniture is back <u>in</u> business again. 37-year-old Timothy Lindlaw is now designing furniture for offices <u>in</u> the director's suite to the secretarial office. Lindlaw had always had a lot of good ideas. After he had run a highly successful computer business <u>for</u> two years, he started his second business <u>at</u> a small garage, selling and installing kitchen furniture. He had made his first million pounds <u>of</u> the time he was thirty. Then he went on to earn over five million <u>in</u> three years. But, after quarrelling <u>with</u> the managers of his company, he suddenly dismissed them. Within six months the business had gone bankrupt. And so had Lindlaw "I had made five	1. _____ 2. _____ 3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
---	---

million pounds before things began to go wrong,” he said. “I was just unlucky to lose it later. All companies go <u>with</u> good times and through bad times. Now I’ve learnt several lessons which I’ll never forget.” He said that he had decided to call his new company “Office- Fit” and was already very successful. Lindlaw said that it was a market worth hundreds <u>of</u> millions. He added that, until he started, no one had ever thought of designing and supplying furniture <u>to</u> whole business companies, according to their individual requirements.	
--	--

KEYS - SCIENCE AND TECHNOLOGY (UNIT 11)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

<i>Science (n)</i> <i>Scientist (n)</i> <i>Scientific (a)</i>	<i>/ˈsaɪəns/</i> <i>/ˈsaɪəntɪst/</i> <i>/ˌsaɪənˈtɪfɪk/</i>	Khoa học Nhà khoa học	<i>Advise (v)</i> <i>Advice (n)</i>	<i>/ədˈvaɪz/</i> <i>/ədˈvaɪs/</i>	Khuyến Lời khuyên
<i>Technology (n)</i> <i>Technological (a)</i>	<i>/tekˈnɒlədʒi/</i> <i>/ˌteknəˈlɒdʒɪkəl/</i>	Kĩ thuật, công nghệ	<i>Chemistry (n)</i> <i>Chemist (n)</i>	<i>/ˈkemɪstri/</i> <i>/ˈkemɪst/</i>	Hóa học Nhà hóa học
<i>Mean (v)</i> <i>Meaning (n)</i> <i>Meaningful (a)</i>	<i>/miːn/</i> <i>/ˈmiːnɪŋ/</i> <i>/ˈmiːnɪŋfl/</i>	Nghĩa là Ý nghĩa Đầy ý nghĩa	<i>Design (v) (n)</i> <i>Designer (n)</i>	<i>/dɪˈzaɪn/</i> <i>/dɪˈzaɪnə(r)/</i>	Thiết kế Nhà thiết kế
<i>Telecommunication (n)</i>	<i>/ˌtelɪkəˌmjuːnɪˈkeɪʃn/</i>	Viễn thông	<i>Marine (a)</i>	<i>/məˈriːn/</i>	(thuộc) biển
<i>Enormous (a)</i>	<i>/ɪˈnɔːməs/</i>	To lớn	<i>Environment (n)</i> <i>Environmental (a)</i>	<i>/ɪnˈvaɪrənmənt/</i> <i>/ɪnˌvaɪrənˈmentl/</i>	Môi trường
<i>Robot (n)</i>	<i>/ˈrəʊbɒt/</i>	Rô bốt	<i>Physics (n)</i> <i>Physicist (n)</i>	<i>/ˈfɪzɪks/</i> <i>/ˈfɪzɪsɪst/</i>	Vật lý Nhà vật lý học
<i>Spaceship (n)</i>	<i>/ˈspeɪsfɪp/</i>	Tàu vũ trụ	<i>Role (n)</i>	<i>/rəʊl/</i>	Vai trò
<i>Traffic jam (n)</i>	<i>/ˈtræfɪk dʒæm/</i>	Tắc đường	<i>Explore (v)</i> <i>Explorer (n)</i> <i>Exploration (n)</i>	<i>/ɪkˈsplɔː/</i> <i>/ɪkˈsplɔːrə(r)/</i> <i>/ˌekspləˈreɪʃn/</i>	Khám phá Nhà thám hiểm
<i>Field (n)</i>	<i>/fiːld/</i>	Lĩnh vực	<i>Archeology (n)</i> <i>Archeologist (n)</i>	<i>/ˌɑːkiˈɒlədʒi/</i> <i>/ˌɑːkiˈɒlədʒɪst/</i>	Khảo cổ học Nhà khảo cổ học
<i>Benefit (n) (v)</i>	<i>/ˈbenɪfɪt/</i>	Lợi ích, hưởng lợi	<i>Develop (v)</i> <i>Development (n)</i>	<i>/dɪˈveləp/</i> <i>/dɪˈveləpmənt/</i> <i>/dɪˈveləpə(r)/</i>	Phát triển

			<i>Developer (n)</i>		
<i>Education (n)</i> <i>Educational (a)</i>	/ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃn/ /ˌedʒuˈkeɪʃnəl/	Giáo dục	<i>Medicine (n)</i> <i>Medical (a)</i>	/ˈmedsn/ /ˈmedɪkl/	Y học, thuốc
<i>Happen (v)</i>	/ˈhæpən/	Xảy ra	<i>Mature (a)</i> <i>Maturity (n)</i>	/məˈtʃʊə(r)/ /məˈtʃʊərəti/	Trưởng thành, chín
<i>Progress (n)</i>	/ˈprəʊɡres/	Sự tiến bộ	<i>Foresee (v)</i> <i>Foreseen (a)</i>	/fɔːˈsiː/	Đoán trước, thấy trước
<i>Solve (v)</i> <i>Solution (n)</i>	/sɒlv/	Giải quyết	<i>Patient (a)</i> <i>Patience (n)</i>	/ˈpeɪʃnt/ /ˈpeɪʃns/	Kiên nhẫn
<i>Yield (n)</i>	/jiːld/	Sản lượng	<i>Pure (a)</i>	/pjʊə(r)/	Nguyên chất, tinh khiết
<i>Decade (n)</i>	/ˈdekeɪd/ /diˈkeɪd/	Thập kỷ	<i>Nature (n)</i> <i>Natural (a)</i>	/ˈneɪtʃə(r)/ /ˈnætʃrəl/	Thiên nhiên
<i>Succeed (v)</i> <i>Success (n)</i> <i>Successful (a)</i>	/səkˈsiːd/ /səkˈses/ /səkˈsesfl/	Thành công	<i>Health (n)</i> <i>Healthy (a)</i>	/helθ/ /ˈhelθi/	Sức khỏe Lành mạnh
<i>Technique (n)</i> <i>Technical (a)</i>	/tekˈniːk/ /ˈteknɪkl/	Thủ thuật, kĩ thuật	<i>Polite (a)</i> <i>Impolite (a)</i>	/pəˈlaɪt/ /ˌɪmpəˈlaɪt/	Lịch sự Bất lịch sự
<i>Research (n)</i> <i>Researcher (n)</i>	/rɪˈsɜːtʃ/ /rɪˈsɜːtʃə(r)/	Nghiên cứu Nhà nghiên cứu	<i>Underground</i> (adj, adv)	/ʌndəˈgraʊnd/	dưới lòng đất, ngầm
<i>Advance (n)</i>	/ədˈvɑːns/	Sự tiến bộ	<i>Experiment (n)</i>	/ɪkˈsperɪmənt/	Thí nghiệm
<i>Improve (v)</i> <i>Improvement (n)</i>	/ɪmˈpruːv/ /ɪmˈpruːvmənt/	Nâng cao, cải thiện	<i>Diet (n)</i>	/ˈdaɪət/	Chế độ ăn uống
<i>Aspect (n)</i>	/ˈæspekt/	Khía cạnh, lĩnh vực	<i>Disease (n)</i>	/diˈziːz/	Bệnh tật
<i>Invent (v)</i> <i>Invention (n)</i> <i>Inventor (n)</i>	/ɪnˈvent/ /ɪnˈvenʃn/ /ɪnˈventə(r)/	Phát minh ra Nhà phát minh	<i>Identify (v)</i>	/aɪˈdentɪfaɪ/	Nhận biết, nhận ra
<i>Transorm (v)</i> <i>Transformation (n)</i>	/trænsˈfɔːm/ /ˌtrænsfəˈmeɪʃn/	Thay đổi, biến đổi	<i>Support (v) (n)</i>	/səˈpɔːt/	Ủng hộ
<i>Insect (n)</i>	/ˈɪnsekt/	Sâu bọ, côn trùng	<i>Replace (v)</i> <i>Replacement (n)</i>	/rɪˈpleɪs/ /rɪˈpleɪsmənt/	Thay thế
<i>Biology (n)</i> <i>Biologist (n)</i>	/baɪˈɒlədʒi/ /baɪˈɒlədʒɪst/	Sinh học Nhà sinh	<i>Probably (adv)</i>	/ˈprɒbəbli/	Hầu như chắc

		vật học			chấn
<i>Realistic (a)</i> <i>Reality (n)</i> <i>Become a reality</i>	<i>/ˈriːəˈlɪstɪk/</i> <i>/riˈæləti/</i> <i>/bɪˈkʌm əriˈæliti/</i>	Hiện thực, thực tế Trở thành hiện thực	<i>Oversleep (v)</i>	<i>/ˌəʊvəˈsliːp/</i>	Ngủ quên
<i>Accurate (a)</i> <i>Accuracy (n)</i>	<i>/ˈækjərət/</i> <i>/ˈækjərəsi/</i>	Chính xác	<i>Steam engine (n)</i>	<i>/stiːm ˈendʒɪn/</i>	Đầu máy hơi nước
<i>Measure (v)</i> <i>Measurement (n)</i>	<i>/ˈmeʒə(r)/</i> <i>/ˈmeʒəmənt/</i>	Đo, đo lường Phép đo, số đo	<i>Transport (v)</i> <i>Transportation (n)</i>	<i>/ˈtrænsˌpɔːt/</i> <i>/ˈtrænsˌpɔːˈteɪʃn/</i>	Chuyên chở, vận tải
<i>Pollute (v)</i> <i>Polluted (a)</i> <i>Pollution (n)</i>	<i>/pəˈluːt/</i> <i>/pəˈluːʃn/</i>	Ô nhiễm	<i>Mistake (n)</i> <i>Make a mistake</i>	<i>/mɪˈsteɪk/</i>	Lỗi, sai lầm Mắc lỗi
<i>Cure (v)</i>	<i>/kjʊə/</i>	Chữa khỏi	<i>Discover (v)</i> <i>Discovery (n)</i>	<i>/dɪˈskʌvə/</i> <i>/dɪˈskʌvəri/</i>	Phát hiện ra
<i>Light bulb (n)</i>	<i>/laɪt bʌlb/</i>	Bóng đèn	<i>Patent (n, v)</i>	<i>/ˈpætnt/</i>	bằng sáng chế, được cấp bằng sáng chế
<i>Precise (adj)</i>	<i>/priˈsaɪs/</i>	Chính xác	<i>Quality (n)</i>	<i>/ˈkwɒləti/</i>	Chất lượng

II. Grammar: Future tenses – Review

Reported speech

1. Future tenses – review

a. Future simple tense (thì tương lai đơn)

➤ Form (Dạng):

will + verb (Viết tắt : 'll verb)(will + động từ nguyên mẫu)

Eg:

+ will go, will eat, will like.....

+ I'll go, she'll like.....

Các thể:

➤ Thể khẳng định: S + WIL + V

Eg:

+ I will help you

+ She will do it

➤ Thể phủ định: S + WILL NOT (WON'T) + V

Eg:

+ I will not (won't) help you.

+ She will not (won't) do it

➤ **Thể nghi vấn: WILL + S + V?**

Eg:

+ Will you help me?

+ Will she do it?

➤ **Usage (Cách dùng):**

➤ *Một việc vừa mới quyết định (quyết định ngay khi nói ra):*

Eg:

+ Wait, I will help you

+ Can you go buy some fruits? _ Ok, I will go!

➤ *Việc mà bạn biết hoặc nghĩ nó sẽ xảy ra trong tương lai (Ko liên quan gì đến dự định hay kế hoạch của bạn):*

Eg:

+ She will be sixteen next Monday.

+ This job won't take long.

➤ *Dùng cho 1 yêu cầu, 1 lời hứa, 1 ý kiến hay 1 lời đề nghị:*

Eg:

+ Will you buy some eggs on your way home?

+ We'll be back early.

+ I'll help you with your homework.

➤ *1 việc xảy ra trong tương lai mà không thể điều khiển được (dự đoán):*

Eg:

+ It will rain tomorrow

+ People won't go to Jupiter before the 22nd century.

Special Khi động từ chính là be, chúng ta có thể dùng Simple Future Tense dù chúng ta đã có 1 quyết định chắc chắn hay 1 kế hoạch trước khi nói :**

Eg:

+ I'll be in London tomorrow.

+ I'm going shopping. I won't be very long.

+ Will you be at work tomorrow?

➤ *Các dấu hiệu nhận biết:*

in + time : in 10 minutes, in a week...

+ I will be there in 10 minutes

next week/month/year...:

tomorrow : ngày mai

I think, probably, we might ..., perhaps, maybe.

Eg:

+ I think I'll go to the gym tomorrow.

+ Maybe we'll stay in and watch television tonight.

+ He will probably come back tomorrow.

b. Be going to

➤ **Form:**

Subject + to be + going to + Verb_bare infinitive

➤ **Usage:**

➤ *Dùng cho việc mà bạn đã quyết định/lập kế hoạch:*

Eg:

+ This weekend, I'm going to visit my parents .

+ She's going to take part in that competition.

****Special: Khi "be going to" đi với động từ "to go" thì ta có thể lược bỏ động từ "to go" :**

Eg:

+ I'm going to (go to) the museum with my friends on Monday

+ She's going to (go to) that old apartment.

➤ *Dùng cho việc mà bạn chắc chắn sẽ xảy ra :*

Eg:

+ There's a hole in front of him. He's going to fall.

+ The sky is very cloudy. It is going to rain.

c. Future continuous tense

➤ **Cấu trúc**

(+) Câu khẳng định:

Subject + will + be + Verb-ing

Eg: Maria will be attending a English course at 5 pm tomorrow

She will be flying to Japan at all day tomorrow

(-) Câu phủ định:

Subject + will not(won't) + be + Verb-ing

Eg: Maria won't be attending a English course at 5 pm tomorrow

My family won't be going to fishing next Sunday.

(?) Câu nghi vấn:

[(Từ để hỏi) + Will + Be + Subject + Verb-ing

Eg: Will be you staying at your friend house in New York at this time next month?

What will I be doing this time tomorrow?

(!) Câu trả lời ngắn:

Yes, I will No, I won't

Yes, you/they/we will No, you/they/we won't

Yes, he/she/it will No, he/she/it won't

➤ **Cách dùng**

** Diễn tả một hành động sẽ diễn ra và kéo dài liên tục trong một khoảng thời gian trong tương lai*

Eg: My parents are going to London, so I'll be staying with my grandma for the next 2 weeks.

I will be playing tennis all day long tomorrow

She will be cleaning the house for 4 hours

* *Diễn tả hành động trong tương lai đang xảy ra thì một hành động khác xảy đến.*

Eg: The band will be playing when the President enters

This time tomorrow Anna will be flying to Japan. Her friends will be waiting for her at Tokyo airport.

I will be going out with friend while my husband will be watching the football match

* *Diễn tả hành động sẽ xảy ra vào một thời điểm xác định hoặc một khoảng thời gian cụ thể trong tương lai*

Eg: I will be waiting for you at 10 o'clock tomorrow

He will be living in this house in April

At this time next year, I'll be studying in Singapore

* *Diễn tả một hành động sẽ xảy ra như một phần của kế hoạch hoặc nằm trong thời gian biểu*

Eg: I will be seeing Tim tomorrow at school

The party will be starting at six thirty.

Heyle will be flying to France on Tuesday

➤ **Những nhầm lẫn có thể gặp khi phân biệt thì tương lai đơn (Simple Future) và thì tương lai tiếp diễn (Future Continuous)**

* *Hiểu nhầm “Will you...?” với nghĩa “Có phải anh...?” thay vì “Xin mời anh...” hoặc ngược lại*

Will you bring the chair in here?

(Nhờ anh mang hộ ghế này vào trong nhé?)

Đây là yêu cầu, tương tự như “Will you (please) sit down? *(Xin mời anh ngồi.)*

Will you be bringing the chair in here?

(Anh có mang ghế vào trong này không?)

Đây là câu hỏi bình thường, người hỏi nhằm mục đích tìm thông tin *(có...hay không?)*

* *Thì tương lai đơn với will thường diễn tả ý định nào đó, nếu muốn diễn tả tương lai đơn thuần (không diễn tả một ý định nào) chúng ta nên dùng thì tương lai tiếp diễn để thay thế*

I'll meet him tomorrow.

(Ngày mai tôi định gặp anh ấy.)

Ngày mai tôi sẽ sắp xếp một cuộc hẹn với anh ấy, tôi đã có ý định này từ trước

I'll be meeting him tomorrow.

(Ngày mai tôi sẽ gặp anh ấy.)

Ở đây, việc gặp anh ấy diễn ra không phải vì tôi muốn gặp mà chỉ vì tôi và anh ấy cùng làm chung một văn phòng

* *Trong câu phủ định won't thường dễ gây nhầm nghĩa vì won't vừa có nghĩa “không chịu” vừa có nghĩa “sẽ không”*

Tom won't cut the grass.

(Tom không chịu cắt cỏ)

Tom từ chối việc cắt cỏ vì anh ấy lười

Tom won't be cutting the grass.

(Tom sẽ không cắt cỏ)

Tom không cắt cỏ vì anh ấy mệt mỏi hoặc đau ốm

d. Future perfect tense



Cấu trúc

- Khẳng định:

S + will + have + VpII

Eg: I will have finished my report by the end of this month.

She will have typed 20 pages by 3 o'clock this afternoon.

- Phủ định:

S + wil not + have + PII

Eg: I wil not have stopped my work before the time you come tomorrow.

My father wil not have come home by 9 pm this evening.

- Câu hỏi:

Will + S + have + PII?

Trả lời: **Yes, S + wil**

No, S + won't

Eg: Will you have gone out by 7 pm tomorrow? - Yes, I will/ No, I won't

Will your parents have come back Vietnam before the summer vacation? - Yes, they will

➤ Cách dùng

- Dùng để diễn tả một hành động hay sự việc hoàn thành trước một thời điểm trong tương lai.

Eg: I **will have finished** my homework before 9 o'clock this evening.

- Dùng để diễn tả một hành động hay sự việc hoàn thành trước một hành động hay sự việc khác trong tương lai.

- Hành động, sự việc hoàn thành trước sẽ chia thì tương lai hoàn thành. Hành động, sự việc xảy ra sau sẽ chia thì hiện tại đơn.

Eg: I **will have made** the meal ready before the time you come tomorrow.

• Dấu hiệu nhận biết thì tương lai hoàn thành

Trong câu có các cụm từ sau:

- by + thời gian trong tương lai

- by the end of + thời gian trong tương lai

- by the time ...

- before + thời gian trong tương lai

Eg: By the end of this month I **will have taken** an English course.

2. Reported speech

Reported Speech = Quoted Speech = Indirect Speech

-> **Reported Speech là câu tường thuật lại một lời nói của ai đó.**

Bạn gặp Tom, Tom nói chuyện với bạn và bạn kể lại cho ai nghe lời Tom nói. Có **2** cách để làm điều này:

Tom said: 'I'm feeling ill'. (Tom nói: 'Tôi muốn bệnh'.) -> Đây là dạng tường thuật trực tiếp (**Direct Speech**). Ở đây ta lặp lại y nguyên lời Tom nói.

Tom said (that) he was feeling ill. (Tom nói (rằng) cậu ta muốn bệnh.) -> Đây là dạng **Reported Speech**, chúng ta lặp lại lời Tom nói theo cách của chúng ta.

-> Khi chúng ta tường thuật lại lời nói là chúng ta nói đến một điều của **quá khứ**. Vì vậy mệnh đề tường thuật chuyển đi một cấp quá khứ so với câu nói trực tiếp.

Để ý ở câu nói Tom nói 'I am' chúng ta tường thuật lại là **he was**.

-> Như vậy để làm một **Reported Speech**, đơn giản chúng ta **ghép** nội dung tường thuật ở phía sau câu nói và **hạ** động từ của nó xuống một cấp quá khứ, đại từ được **chuyển** đổi cho phù hợp.
Tom said: 'I bought a new motorbike for myself yesterday.'

-> **Tom said (that) he had bought a new motorbike for himself the day before.** (Tom nói (rằng) anh ấy đã mua một chiếc xe máy mới cho mình 1 ngày trước đây).

Tom said: 'My parents are very well'.

-> **Tom said (that) his parents were very well.** (Tom nói (rằng) bố mẹ anh ấy rất khỏe).

Bảng đối đại từ nhân xưng và tính từ sở hữu			
Direct speech		Indirect speech	
I		He	/She
We		They	
Me	/	Him	/Her
Us		Them	
Mine		His	/ Hers
Ours		Theirs	
My		His	/ Her
Our		Their	
Myself		Himself / herself	

NOTE: Ngoài quy tắc chung về các thay đổi ở đại từ, cần chú ý đến các thay đổi khác liên quan đến **vị trí tương đối** của người đóng vai trò tường thuật.

Jane: 'Tom, you should listen to me'.

-> Jane tự tường thuật lại lời của mình: **I told Tom that he should listen to me.**

- > Người khác thuật lại lời nói của Jane: *Jane told Tom that he should listen to her.*
- > Người khác thuật lại cho Tom nghe: *Jane told you that you should listen to her.*
- > Tom thuật lại lời nói của Jane: *Jane told me that I should listen to her.*

Bảng đổi động từ	
Direct speech	Indirect speech
Simple present	Simple past Past
Present progressive	progressive
Present perfect (Progressive)	Past perfect (Progressive)
Past progressive	Past perfect continuous
Simple past	Simple past or Past perfect
Past perfect	Past perfect
Will/Shall (Simple future)	Would/ Should (Future in the past)
Be going to	Was/ Were going to
Will be V-ing	Would be V-ing
Future perfect	Perfect conditional
Can/May/	Could/ Might/
Must/Have to	Had to
Needn't	Did not have to
Must/ Should/ Shouldn't	Must/ Should/ Shouldn't
Present conditional	Perfect conditional
<i>He does -> He did</i>	<i>He will have done -> He would have done</i>
<i>He is doing -> He was doing</i>	<i>He may do -> He might do</i>
<i>He has done -> He had done</i>	<i>He may be doing -> He might be doing</i>
<i>He has been doing -> He had been doing</i>	<i>He can do -> He could do</i>
<i>He will do -> He would do</i>	<i>He can have done -> He could have done</i>
<i>He will be doing -> He would be doing</i>	<i>He must do/have to do -> He had to do</i>

NOTE:

+ Trong trường hợp câu trực tiếp ở **Simple Past**, khi chuyển sang **Reported Speech**, chúng ta có thể **giữ nguyên** nó hay chuyển sang **Past Perfect** đều được.

*Tom said: 'I **woke up** feeling ill and so I **stayed** in bed' (Tom nói: 'Tôi thức dậy thấy bệnh vì vậy tôi nằm lại giường)*

-> *Tom said (that) he **woke up** feeling ill and so he **stayed** in bed.*

or *Tom said he **had woken up** feeling ill and so he **had stayed** in bed.*

+ Trong câu tường thuật, động từ khiếm khuyết **MUST** thường được chuyển thành **HAD TO**, **NEEDN'T** chuyển thành **DID NOT HAVE TO**, nhưng **MUST**, **SHOULD**, **SHOULDN'T** khi chỉ sự cảm đoán, lời khuyên thì vẫn được giữ nguyên.

His father said to him: 'You **must** study harder'.

-> *His father told him that he **had to study harder**. (Bố cậu ấy bảo rằng cậu ấy phải học chăm hơn).*

Jane said: 'You **needn't** water the flowers because it rained last night.'

-> *Jane said (that) he **didn't have to water the flowers because it had rained the day before**. (Jane nói rằng anh ấy không cần phải tưới hoa vì đã mưa vào tối hôm trước).*

The doctor said to Tom: 'You **should** stay in bed'.

-> *The doctor told Tom that he **should stay in bed**. (Vị bác sĩ bảo Tom rằng cậu ấy nên ở trên giường).*

Bảng đối các đại từ chỉ thị, phó từ chỉ địa điểm và thời gian

Now	Then
Today	That day
Tonight	That night
Yesterday	The day before/ the previous day
The day before yesterday	Two days before
Tomorrow	The next/ the following day/ the day after
The day after tomorrow	In two days' time/ two days after
Next + Time	The following + Time
Last + Time	The previous + Time/ The + Time + before
Time + ago	Time + before/ Time + earlier
This, these	That, those
That	That
Here, Overhere	There, Overthere

Jane said: 'I saw the school-boy here in this room today.'

-> *Jane said (that) she **had seen the school-boy there in that room that day**.*

NOTE:

+ Nếu lời nói và hành động xảy ra **cùng ngày** thì không cần phải đổi thời gian.

At breakfast **this morning** Tom said: 'I **will** be busy **today**'.

-> *At breakfast **this morning** Tom said he **would** be busy **today**.*

+ Nếu động từ giới thiệu trong câu nói trực tiếp ở thì hiện tại hoặc tương lai (**say, will say, have said, ...**), thì động từ trong câu tường thuật và các trạng từ chỉ thời gian và nơi chốn khi được đổi sang vẫn giữ nguyên.

Jane **says**: 'The train **will leave** here **in 5 minutes**'.

-> *Jane **says** (that) the train **will leave** here **in 5 minutes**.*

+ Khi chúng ta tường thuật lại một điều mà **trong hiện tại vẫn còn đúng như vậy**, không nhất thiết phải chuyển nó sang quá khứ.

Tom said: 'New York **is** bigger than London'.

-> Tom said (that) New York **is** bigger than London'.

+ Nếu câu nói trực tiếp diễn tả 1 **sự thật hiển nhiên** thì khi chuyển sang câu tường thuật động từ vẫn không đổi.

The professor said: 'The moon **revolves** around the earth'.

-> The professor said (that) the moon **revolves** around the earth. (Giáo sư nói (rằng) mặt trăng quay xung quanh trái đất).

+ Các suy luận logic về mặt thời gian tất nhiên là cần thiết khi lời nói được thuật lại **sau đó một hoặc hai ngày**.

(On Monday) Tom said: 'I'll be leaving **on Wednesday**'.

-> (On Tuesday) Tom said (that) he would be leaving **tomorrow**.

-> (On Wednesday) Tom said he would be leaving **today**.

Câu hỏi trong lời nói gián tiếp:

Câu hỏi trong lời nói gián tiếp được chia thành các loại sau:

1. Câu hỏi bắt đầu với các trợ động từ (không có từ hỏi): thêm **if/ whether**

Tom asked: 'Do you remember me?' (Tom hỏi: 'Anh có nhớ tôi không?')

-> Tom asked **if I remembered him**.

or Tom asked **whether I remembered him**. (Tom hỏi tôi có nhớ anh ấy không?)

2. Câu hỏi bắt đầu **WHO, WHAT, WHICH, WHERE, WHEN, WHY, HOW, ...**: Các từ để hỏi trên sẽ được giữ nguyên trong câu gián tiếp. Tuy nhiên, **thứ tự** của chủ từ và trợ động từ được đổi lại.

Câu hỏi: Trợ động từ + Chủ từ

Tường thuật: Chủ từ + (Trợ động từ)

Tom asked me: '**What is** your name?' (Tom hỏi tôi: 'Tên bạn là gì?')

-> Tom asked me **what my name was**. (Tom hỏi tôi tên gì)

3. Các dạng đặc biệt của câu hỏi trong lời nói gián tiếp

-> **SHALL/ WOULD** dùng để diễn tả đề nghị, lời mời:

Tom asked: '**Shall I** bring you some tea?'

-> Tom **offered to bring me some tea**.

Tom asked: '**Shall we** meet at the theatre?'

-> Tom **suggested meeting at the theatre**.

-> **WILL/ WOULD/ CAN/ COULD** dùng để diễn tả sự yêu cầu:

Tom asked: 'Will you help me, please?'

-> *Tom asked me to help him.*

Jane asked Tom: 'Can you open the door for me, Tom?'

-> *Jane asked Tom to open the door for her.*

-> **Câu cầu khiến, mệnh lệnh, khuyên bảo, đề nghị**

-> Đổi động từ giới thiệu sang **TELL** (hoặc **ASK, SAY, ORDER, BEG, ADVISE, REMIND, WARN, ...**) tùy theo ý nghĩa của câu.

-> Nếu câu cầu khiến ở thể khẳng định: đổi động từ sang nguyên mẫu có **to** theo mẫu: **TELL/ ASK/ ... + PRONOUN/ NOUN + TO-INFINITIVE**

-> Nếu câu cầu khiến ở thể phủ định: đổi động từ theo mẫu: **TELL/ ASK/ ... + PRONOUN/ NOUN + NOT + TO-INFINITIVE**

'Stay in bed for a few days', the doctor said to me. ('Hãy nằm nghỉ vài ngày đã' - bác sĩ nói với tôi).

-> *The doctor said to me to stay in bed for a few days.* (Bác sĩ bảo tôi nằm nghỉ vài ngày đã).

'Please don't tell anyone what happened', Jane said to me.

-> *Jane asked me not to tell anyone what (had) happened.*

Jane said: 'Close the door and go away!'

-> *Jane told me to close the door and go away.* (Jane bảo tôi đóng cửa lại và đi chỗ khác.)

The commandor said to his soldier: 'Shoot!'

-> *The commandor ordered his soldier to shoot.* (Người chỉ huy ra lệnh cho lính của mình bắn.)

III. Pronunciation: Stress in words starting with **un-** and **im-**

Prefixes (**un-**, **in-**, **il-**, **ir-**, and **dis-**) are often used to give adjectives (and some verbs and nouns) a negative meaning. Here are common examples:

happy unhappy

possible impossible

legal illegal (= against the law)

correct incorrect

regular irregular, e.g. irregular verbs

un- is used with many different words, e.g. **unfriendly, unable, unemployed** (= without a job), **untidy** (= not in order; **in a mess**)

im- is used before some words beginning with **m** or **p**, e.g. **impolite** (= rude),

impatient (somebody who is **impatient** wants things to happen now; they cannot wait for things)

Note: A prefix does not normally change word stress, e.g. happy/unhappy; possible/impossible. But the stress may change if you want to emphasise the negative or opposite:

- A: Was he happy about the change?
- B: No, he was very unhappy about it.

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word in each line that has different stress pattern.

- | | | | |
|------------------------|-----------------------|----------------------|------------------|
| 1. A. impair | B. unhurt | C. effect | D. insect |
| 2. A. explorer | B. accurate | C. unhealthy | D. immature |
| 3. A. unnatural | B. engineering | C. impossible | D. environment |
| 4. A. unhelpful | B. unlikely | C. unforeseen | D. unusual |
| 5. A. imprecise | B. imperfect | C. impartial | D. impassive |

II. Write the opposite of these words, using *un-* or *im-*, and then read the words aloud.

- | | | | |
|---------------|---------------------|----------------|----------------------|
| 1. Attractive | <i>unattractive</i> | 6. Pleasant | <i>unpleasant</i> |
| 2. Polite | <i>impolite</i> | 7. Competitive | <i>uncompetitive</i> |
| 3. Practical | <i>impractical</i> | 8. Lucky | <i>unlucky</i> |
| 4. Natural | <i>unnatural</i> | 9. Necessary | <i>unnecessary</i> |
| 5. Official | <i>unofficial</i> | 10. Proper | <i>improper</i> |

III. Complete the following sentences with nouns indicating people.

1. A person who paints or draws is a/an _____. *artist*
2. A person who writes novels is a/an _____. *novelist*
3. A person who is starting to learn something for the first time is a/an _____. *beginner*
4. A person who is in your family who lived a long time before is a/an _____. *ancestor*
5. A person who plays the piano is a/an _____. *pianist*

IV. Give the correct form of the word given to complete the sentences.

1. There is still room for _____ in your work.
2. Today scientific progress is mostly defined in terms of _____ advancements.
3. The first experiment was _____, so we need to do another one.
4. A _____ is a scientist who studies the solid and liquid matter that constitutes the Earth.
5. The US, _____ of the Moon began with the Ranger 4 impactor in 1962.
6. A nuclear power reactor _____ could provide assistance with the loading and unloading of nuclear fuel.
7. The study points out that many people's health has been affected from bathing in or drinking _____ water.
8. Thousands of _____ are used in everyday products – in our water, our food and in the air we breathe.
9. _____ in Japan have found that human ageing may be able to be delayed or even reversed.
10. Here are several _____ proven studies that describe how to keep fit.

Impro
Technolo

Succe
Geolo

Exxplo

Opera

Pu

Chemist

Resear

Scien

- | | |
|-------------------------|---------------------------|
| 1. <i>Improvement</i> | 6. <i>Operator</i> |
| 2. <i>Technological</i> | 7. <i>Impure</i> |
| 3. <i>Unsuccessful</i> | 8. <i>Chemicals</i> |
| 4. <i>Geologist</i> | 9. <i>Researchers</i> |
| 5. <i>Exploration</i> | 10. <i>Scientifically</i> |

V. Find one word that does not belong to each group.

- | | | | |
|----------------------|-------------------|------------------|---------------------|
| 1. A. developer | B. researcher | C. cooker | D. technician |
| 2. A. explore | B. communicate | C. disagree | D. biologist |
| 3. A. physics | B. economic | C. technical | D. enormous |
| 4. A. zoology | B. apology | C. anthropology | D. archaeology |
| 5. A. unchanged | B. unaware | C. unsure | D. uncle |

VI. Choose the best answer (A, B, C or D) to complete each of the following sentences.

- If the teacher were here now, we'd ask him the difference_____ "science" and "technology".
 a. Among b. Of c. **Between** d. for
- She needs to work on her interview_____ if she wants to get the job.
 a. **Technique** b. Technology c. Technological d. technician
- The teacher_____ me that I had better devote more time to science subjects such as physics, chemistry and biology.
 a. Said b. Talked c. Spoke
 d. **told**
- Science is used in all corners of the world for the_____ of people.
 a. Interest b. Need c. Profits
 d. **benefit**
- Artificial intelligence (AI) is an area of_____ concerned with making computers copy intelligent human behaviour.
 a. Learning b. **Study** c. Lesson d. invention
- The protection of technologies and technological information has become_____ for many nations.
 a. The importance of a concern c. The importance concerning
 b. A concern of important d. **an important concern**
- If you_____ something, you should patent it as quickly as possible.

- a. Invented b. Will invent c. **Have invented** d. are inventing
8. The new invention could have a wide range of _____ in industry.
- a. **Applications** b. Concerns c. Goodness
- d. advance

VII. Give the correct form of the verbs in brackets to finish the sentences.

1. Japan (build)_____a robotic moon base by 2020, built by robots, and for robots.
2. China (connect)_____Beijing to London with a high-speed railway soon.
3. Car-makers (design) _____self-driving cars to offer extreme safety and ease of transport.
4. The US military officials say that navy ships (run)_____on 50 percent of biofuels by 2020.
5. We (implant)_____chips in the brain to control devices by the year 2050.
6. With commercial space travel, we (take)_____minerals from the moon at this time in 2030.
7. Universal translation (become)_____common in mobile devices.
8. We (create)_____a synthetic brain that functions like the real one in the year 2050.
9. That exercise looks difficult. I (help)_____you.
10. They (fly)_____to New York next summer holidays.
11. We (observe)_____Mars from the National Space Centre at this time next week.
12. People (travel)_____by flying car in the future.
13. Look at the clouds! It (rain)_____in a few minute.
14. I promise I (not tell)_____your secret to anyone.
15. They (test)_____the latest model of Iphone at 9 o'clock tomorrow.
16. I think they (invent)_____a new building material next year.
17. We've already decided. We (not buy)_____a robot vacuum cleaner.
18. Goodbye, Ms. White. I (phone)_____you as soon as I arrive home.

1. *will have built*

9. *will help*

2. *will connect*

10. *are going to fly*

3. will design

4. *will have run*

5. *will have implanted*

6. *will be taking*

7. *will become*

8. *will create*

11. will be observing

12. *will travel*

13. *is going to rain*

14. won't tell

15. *will be testing*

16. *will invent*

17. *aren't going to buy*

18. *will phone*

VIII. Change the sentences into reported speech. (van, tri)

1. “I like to do physics experiments.”

He said that
.....
.....

2. “You have to keep quiet if you want to stay here.”

She told me that

.....

3. “I will hand in my assignment to the teacher tomorrow.”

She _____ said

.....

.....

4. “The film will begin at seven o’clock.”

They announced that

5. "We have never seen this species of lizard before."

Biologists said that

6. "Cloning will become more popular in the next century."

The scientist said that

7. “Every home will have at least one robot to perform any boring task.”

Dr Nelson said that

8. "Parents do not allow children to play computer games for a long period of time."

The teacher told us that

.....

9. "Nuclear power plants don't require a lot of space."

The physicist said that

.....

10. "Wrong decisions in Chernobyl caused a big nuclear explosion."

The politician told the audience that

.....

1. *He said (that) he liked to do physics experiments.*

2. *She told me that I had to keep quiet if I wanted to stay there.*

3. *She said that she would hand in her assignment to the teacher the next/ following day.*

4. *They announced that the film would begin at seven o'clock.*

5. *Biologists said (that) they had never seen that species of lizard before.*

6. *The scientist said that cloning would become more popular in the next century.*

7. *Dr. Nelson said that every home would have at least one robot to perform any boring task.*

8. *Our teacher told us that parents did not allow children to play computer games for a long period of time.*

9. *The physicist said that nuclear power plants didn't require a lot of space.*

10. *The politician told the audience that wrong decisions in Chernobyl had caused a big nuclear explosion.*

IX. Rewrite the following sentences in direct speech.

1. Viet said that he would be doing an experiment at 10 o'clock the following day.

.....
.....

2. Mr. Quang told me that they hadn't been at the Young Inventors Club the night before.

.....
.....

3. She told me that I could try it then if I liked.

.....
.....

4. He said that he was going to hire a robot the following Saturday.

.....
.....

5. Mary told me that her parents didn't want her to participate in that project.

.....
.....

6. They said that they wouldn't send people to the moon the following year.

.....
.....

7. Mr. Smith told me that he had worked with my father for 10 year.

.....
.....

8. Lucia said that they weren't going to the cinema that night.

.....
.....

9. Bob said that he had been a flying saucer the previous evening.

.....
.....

10. Dr. Nelson said that their students had been studying Astronomy at 3p.m the day before.

.....
.....

1. *"I will be doing ann experiment at 10 o'clock tomorrow," Viet said.*

2. *"We weren't at the Young Inventors Club last night," Mr. Quang told me.*

3. *"You can try it now if you like," she told me.*

4. *"I'm going to hire a robot next Saturday," he said.*

5. *"My parents don't want me to participate in this/ that project," Mary told me.*

6. *"We won't send people to the moon next year," they said.*

7. *"I have worked with your father for 10 years," Mr. Smith told me.*

8. *"We aren't going to the cinema tonight," Lucia said.*

9. *"I saw a flying saucer yesterday evening," Bob said.*

10. *"Our students were studying Astronomy at 3p.m yesterday," Dr. Nelson said.*

X. Choose the word or phrase among A, B, C or D that best fits the blank space in the following passage.

Computers are helpful (1)_____many ways. First, they are fast. They can work with information even (2)_____quickly than a person. Second, computers can work with a lot of information at the same time. Third, they can (3)_____information for a long time. They do not forget things that the common people do. (4)_____, computers are almost always correct. They are not perfect, but they usually do not (5)_____mistakes.

Recently, it is important (6)_____about computers. There are a number of things to learn. Some companies have (7)_____at work. In addition, most universities (8)_____day and night courses in Computer Science. Another way to learn is from a book, or from a friend. After a few hours of practice, you can (9)_____with computers. You may not be an expert, but can have (10)_____.

1. A. **in** B. on C. at D. over
2. A. much B. rather C. **more** D. less
3. A. hold B. carry C. stay D. **keep**
4. A. However B. **Moreover** C. Therefore D. Nevertheless
5. A. do B. **make** C. have D. take
6. A. know B. knowing C. **to know** D. knew
7. A. **classes** B. meetings C. schools D. discussions
9. A. send B. **offer** C. bring D. spend
10. A. use B. make C. **work** D. take
11. A. **fun** B. funny C. enjoy D. for fun

XI. Read the following passage and answer the questions.

Inventions That Changes Our World

People have been inventing things for years. Paper was invented about 2,000 years ago. The wheel was invented more than 5,000 years ago. What would life be like without paper to write on or bikes to ride? Those inventions have made life easier.

Airplane

The Wright Brothers invented the first airplane in December 1903. That makes 2003 the 100th **anniversary**! Before the airplane was invented, most people traveled by cars, boats, and trains. Today, airplanes help people travel faster. How do airplanes help you?

Telephone

Alexander Graham Bell invented the telephone in 1876. Before the telephone was invented, people kept in touch by writing letters or talking in person. Today the telephone makes it easier for people to talk to one another. How do telephones help you?

Automobile

The first four-wheeled gas-powered car was invented by Karl Benz in 1891. Before people had cars, they couldn't travel easily. They walked or rode horses for short trips. They took trains or boat for long trips. Today cars are one of the main ways people travel. How do cars help you?

Computer

People worked for years to make the first computer. It was built in 1946. The first computer was called ENIAC. Today computers are an important part of many people's lives. People use computers as tools to write, get information, and much more. How do computers help you?

6. Which of the following are two inventions in the passage that were invented before 1900?
 - a. *The telephone and the car*
 - b. The car and the computer
 - c. The computer and the airplane
 - d. The airplane and the telephone
7. What do all the inventions described in this text have in common?
 - a. All these inventions were invented in the twentieth century.
 - b. All these inventions were invented by Americans.
 - c. *All these inventions made people's lives easier.*
 - d. All these inventions changed how people travel.
8. It can be inferred from the passage that_____.
 - a. The Wright Brothers spent a long time trying to invent the airplane.
 - b. *Someone had the idea to invent the computer in the 1940s or early 1950s.*
 - c. Karl benz didn't like to walk or ride horses for short trips.
 - d. Alexander Graham Bell wrote many letters in his lifetime.
9. What does the word **anniversary** in the second paragraph most nearly mean?
 - a. An interesting idea
 - b. An event
 - c. a statement of fact
 - d. *a celebrated date*

10. The primary purpose of this passage is to describe_____.

- a. The invention of the airplane in December 1903.
- b. **Some inventions that have made a big difference.**
- c. Some ways that computers help make our lives easier.
- d. The reasons that Karl Benz invented the gas-powered car.

XII. Write a paragraph of about 100 words on the following topic. (Van)

Do you agree or disagree with the following idea?

The invention of computer games causes a lot of problems for children.

You can refer to the following factors:

- Time (wasting or not wasting)
- Health (negative or positive effect)
- Brain (negative or positive effect)

TEST (Unit 11)

A. PHONETICS

I. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

- | | | | |
|------------------------------------|------------|---------------|---|
| 6. A. allow
fellow | B. follow | C. yellow | D. |
| 7. A. exhaust
house | B. hour | C. honest | D. <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 30px; display: inline-block;"></div> |
| 8. A. mood
good | B. moon | C. soon | D. <div style="border: 1px solid black; width: 30px; height: 30px; display: inline-block;"></div> |
| 9. A. Dutch | B. Russian | C. just | D. use |
| 10. A. descent
continent | B. Dissent | C. discontent | D. |

II. Choose the word that has a different stress pattern from the others.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------------------|----------------|-----------------------|----|
| 6. A. consequently
complain | B. advantage | C. apologise | D. |
| 7. A. relationship
eliminate | B. arrangement | C. challenging | D. |

8. A. Prescription B. profession C. mechanic D.
 calculate
9. A. **Japanese** B. English C. Indian D.
 American
10. A. **emphasize** B. equipment C. improvement D.
 distinguish

B. VOCABULARY & GRAMMAR

I. Turn the adverb of time in the box into indirect speech.

Direct speech	Indirect speech/ reported speech
Tomorrow	<i>The following day/ the next day</i>
Next Sunday	The next Sunday
In two weeks	In two weeks' time
Today	The same day/ that day
Yesterday	The day before/ the previous day
Yesterday evening	The previous evening
The day before yesterday	Two days before/ earlier
Two days ago	Two days before/ earlier
Next week	The following week/ the next week
Last week	The previous week
Now	then
Here	there
This (morning)	that (morning)

II. Choose the correct option A, B, C or D to complete the sentences.

1. Lien told me that _____ a biology teacher.
- a. She wants to become c. she will become
- b. **she wanted to become** d. she wanted becoming
2. We reminded Lily _____ late for our appointment the next day.
- a. To be not c. to don't be

- b. *Not to be* d. don't be
3. My sister asked _____ the dress for me?
- a. You used to buy c. *will you buy*
- b. You would buy d. you buy
4. “_____ for a cup of tea?” I asked my friends.
- a. We will meet c. We shall meet
- b. We are meeting d. *Shall we meet*
5. My mother asked Lorie _____ in her tests.
- a. If she will do well c. Why did she not do well
- b. Whether she did not do well d. *Why she did not do well*
6. We advised Sue not to be a spend thrift and that she _____ more money.
- a. Not to save c. *Should save*
- b. Was saving d. Not save
7. The teacher said _____ a week off on the occasion of the International Labor Day.
- a. We will have c. We have
- b. We didn't have d. *We would have*
8. Tomoko and Kiko said that they _____ cycling the day after tomorrow.
- a. Will go c. *Would go*
- b. Have gone d. has gone
9. “The sun _____” declared my younger brother confidently.
- a. *Sets in the west* c. Are set in the west
- b. Are setting in the west d. Set in the west
10. The teacher told us _____ of failure if I tried all my best.
- a. Don't be afraid c. *Not to be afraid*
- b. To be don't afraid d. To don't be afraid

III. Fill each blank with a suitable word in the box to complete the passage.

<i>working</i>	<i>by</i>	<i>for</i>	<i>questions</i>
<i>invented</i>			
<i>there</i>	<i>all</i>	<i>are</i>	<i>information</i>

However

Nowadays a lot of important inventions (1)_____carried out by scientists (2)_____for large industrial firms. (3)_____, there are still opportunities (4)_____other people to invent various things. In Britain, (5)_____is a weekly television program which attempts to show (6)-_____the various devices which people have recently (7)-_____. The people organizing the program receive (8)_____about 700 inventions a year. New ideas can still be developed (9)_____private inventors. However, it is important to consider these (10)_____. Will it work? Will it be wanted? Is it new?

- | | |
|-------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. <i>Are</i> | 6. <i>All</i> |
| 2. <i>Working</i> | 7. <i>Invented</i> |
| 3. <i>However</i> | 8. <i>Information</i> |
| 4. <i>For</i> | 9. <i>By</i> |
| 5. <i>There</i> | 10. <i>questions</i> |

C. READING

I. Choose the correct tenses given in column A with suitable tenses in column B to make sure when you turn into reported speech.

(Direct speech)	(Indirect speech/ reported speech)
9. Present simple	h. Could
10. Present continuous	i. Past continuous
11. Present perfect	j. Had to
12. Past simple	k. Past perfect
13. Will	l. Would
14. Can	m. Past simple
15. May	n. Might
16. Must	

- | | | | |
|-------------|-------------|-------------|-------------|
| 1. <i>F</i> | 3. <i>D</i> | 5. <i>E</i> | 7. <i>G</i> |
| 2. <i>B</i> | 4. <i>D</i> | 6. <i>A</i> | 8. <i>C</i> |

i. II. Read and choose the best option A, B, C or D to complete the passage.

Bicycles

The bicycle is one of the simplest yet most useful inventions in the world. What is most surprising is that it was not (1)_____ earlier, although the great inventor Leonardo da Vinci had drawn picture for bicycle and also for flying machines and some other things. Those things were not produced (2) _____ long after he died.

A person riding a bicycle use (3)_____energy to make the bicycle move, and there is no pollution at all when you are riding. Even so in developed (4)-_____, most people don't travel to work by bicycle. It is not because the bicycles are expensive or people feel (5)_____if they ride to work. It's because (6)_____cars on the roads becomes larger. It certainly becomes (7) _____to ride a bicycle. As a result, more people put their bicycles away and go to work (8)_____their cars, and in this way, the situation is made more serious. (9)_____the best way to make riding safer and more popular is to create paths only for bicycle and to make (10)_____so difficult and expensive for drivers to their cars into the city that they will go back to use their bicycles.

- | | | | |
|------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------|-----------------|
| 1. A. had | B. used | C. invented | D. ridden |
| 2. A. before | B. when | C. since | D. until |
| 3. A. much | B. quite a lot of | C. very little | D. many |
| 4. A. world | B. countries | C. land | D. earth |
| 5. A. lucky | B. glad | C. sorry | C. tired |
| 6. A. the | B. a number of | C. this kind of | D. all kinds of |
| | number of | | |
| 7. A. safe | B. more dangerous | C. much | D. popular |
| 8. A. by | B. in | C. use | D. drive |
| 9. A. Hardly | B. Maybe | C. perhaps | D. Nearly |
| 10. A. it | B. them | C. us | D. that |

ii.

III. Read the passage and fill one suitable word in each blank.

The history of the computer in the twentieth century is one of dramatic adaption and expansion. The computer had modest beginnings in areas where it was (1)_____as a specialist tool. The first electronic computer was built in the 1930s and was solely for use (2)_____undergraduate students in Iowa State University to handle mathematical computations in nuclear physics. (3)_____World War Two computers were developed in order to wage counter espionage and break codes used by the enemy. In the post-war years the scope of computers was expanded to include the military industrial complex and academia.

Obviously people needed to (4)_____around these institutions and so there was a need for early network tools. In the 1960's an early version of the Internet, ARPPANET was used in computers were starting to change our lifestyle, the way we do business and many style things (Elliot, 1994) and by the late 1980's networks were expanding to embrace sections of the general public. The (5)_____was born.

1. Used
2. Of
3. During
4. Communicate
5. Internet

D. WRITING

I. Turn these sentences into reported speech.

1. "I try to learn hard to pass the entrance exam."

Nam _____ said

 ...

2. "Jane doesn't want to come to Bobby's party."

Mary _____ told

 ...

3. "My daughter is writing a letter to her French friends now."

Jane's _____ mother _____ informed

4. "Kate will be a good teacher in the future."

The _____ principal _____ hoped

5. "We may go sightseeing in Sapa next week."

My _____ friends _____ told _____ be

1. *Nam said that he tried to learn hard to pass the entrance exam.*
2. *Mary told me that Jane didn't want to come to Bobby's party.*
3. *Jane's mother informed me that her daughter was writing a letter to French friends then.*
4. *The Principal hoped kate would be a good teacher in the future.*
5. *My friends told me that they might go sightseeing in Sapa the next week/ the following week.*

II. Turn these sentences from reported speech into direct speech.

1. Albert Einstein stated that once you stop learning, you start dying.

.....
.....

2. Lan told me that she would go camping with her classmates the next day.

.....
.....

3. The scientists told us that in the near future, robots in our home would do all the housework for us.

.....
.....

4. I believed science and technology were the keys to develop in the society.

.....
.....

5. All of us knew that the way to the success was not easy.

.....
.....

1. *“Once you stop learning, you start dying,” Albert Einstein stated.*
2. *“I will go camping with my classmates tomorrow,” Lan said.*
3. *“In the near future, robots in our home will do all the housework for us,” the scientists told us.*
4. *“Science and technology are the keys to develop in the society,” I believed.*
5. *“The way to the success is not easy,” all of us knew.*

III. There are five mistakes in ten underlined prepositions in this passage. Find out and correct them.

The man who made and lost a fortune manufacturing kitchen furniture is back <u>in</u> business again. 37-year-old Timothy Lindlaw is now designing furniture for offices <u>in</u> the director’s suite to the secretarial office. Lindlaw had always had a lot of good ideas. After he had run a highly successful computer business <u>for</u> two years, he started his second business <u>at</u> a small garage, selling and	1. _____ 2. _____
--	----------------------

installing kitchen furniture. He had made his first million pounds <u>of</u> the time he was thirty. Then he went on to earn over five million <u>in</u> three years. But, after quarrelling <u>with</u> the managers of his company, he suddenly dismissed them. Within six months the business had gone bankrupt. And so had Lindlaw “I had made five million pounds before things began to go wrong,” he said. “I was just unlucky to lose it later. All companies go <u>with</u> good times and through bad times. Now I’ve learnt several lessons which I’ll never forget.” He said that he had decided to call his new company “Office- Fit” and was already very successful. Lindlaw said that it was a market worth hundreds <u>of</u> millions. He added that, until he started, no one had ever thought of designing and supplying furnitute <u>to</u> whole business companies, according to their individual requirements.	3. _____ 4. _____ 5. _____
--	----------------------------------

1. In -> from 2. At -> in 3. Of -> by 4. With -> through 5. To -> for

LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS (Unit 12)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

accommodate(v) accommodation(n))	/ə'kɒmədeɪt/ /əkɒmə'deɪʃ(ə) n/	c/cấp nơi ăn ở chỗ ăn ở	UFO <i>Unidentified Flying Object</i>		vật thể bay ko xác định
adventure(n) adventurer(n)	/əd'ventʃə/ /əd'ventʃ(ə)rə/	cuộc phiêu lưu người phiêu lưu	space buggy(n)	/speɪs'bʌɡi/	xe vũ trụ
alien(n)	/'eɪlɪən/	người ngoài hành tinh	stand(v)	/stand/	chịu đựng
experience(n,v)	/ɪk'spiəriəns/	kinh nghiệm, trải qua	surface(n)	/'sə:fɪs/	bề mặt
danger(n) dangerous(adj)	/'deɪn(d)ʒə/ /'deɪn(d)ʒ(ə)rə s/	sự nguy hiểm nguy hiểm	trace(n,v)	/treɪs/	dấu vết, truy tìm
flying saucer(n)	/'flaɪɪŋ'sɔ:sə/	đĩa bay	terrorist(n)	/'tɛrərɪst/	kẻ khủng bố
galaxy(n)	/'galəksi/	dải ngân hà	trek(v,n)	/trɛk/	du hành. chuyến du hành
Jupiter(n)	/'dʒu:pɪtə/	sao mộc	Saturn(n)	/'sat(ə)n/	sao thổ
Mars(n)	/mɑ:z/	sao hỏa	uncontrollably (adv)	/ʌnkən'trəʊl əbli/	ko khống chế được

messenger(n)	/ˈmɛsɪn(d)ʒə/	người đưa tin	Venus(n)	/ˈviːnəs/	sao kim
Mercury(n)	/ˈmɜːkjəri/	sao thủy	weightless (adj)	/ˈweɪtləs/	không trọng lượng
NASA <i>National Aeronautics and Space Administration</i>	/ˈnasə/	cơ quan hàng không & vũ trụ mỹ	inhabitant(n)	/ɪnˈhæbɪt(ə)n t/	dân cư, người cư trú
Neptune(n)	/ˈneɪptjuːn/	sao hải vương	liquid(n)	/ˈlɪkwɪd/	chất lỏng
outer space(n)	/ˈaʊtə speɪs/	ngoài vũ trụ	orbit(n,v)	/ˈɔːbɪt/	quỹ đạo, đưa vào quỹ đạo
poison(n,v) poisonous(adj)	/ˈpɔɪz(ə)n/ /ˈpɔɪz(ə)nəs/	chất độc, gây độc độc, có độc	name after(v)	/neɪmˈɑːftə/	đặt theo tên
commit(v) commitment(n)	/kəˈmɪt/ /kəˈmɪtm(ə)nt /	cam kết sự cam kết	telescope(n)	/ˈtelɪskəʊp/	kính thiên văn
desolate(v, adj)	/ˈdes(ə)lət/	tàn phá, bị tàn phá	tranquil(adj)	/ˈtræŋkwɪl/	thanh bình, lặng lẽ
leatherback sea turtle (n)	/ˈleðəbæk siː tɜːtl/	rùa da/luýt	saola(n)	/ˈsaʊləː/	kỳ lân

II. Grammar

1. MAY – MIGHT

2. Reported speech: Questions

III. Pronunciation

Stress in words ending in –full or less

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word in each line that has different stress pattern

- a. continent b. cinema c. elephant **d. computer**
- a. receptionist b. biography c. disqualify **d. operation**
- a. atmosphere **b. inhabit** c. meaningless d. powerful
- a. unsuitable b. emotionless **c. uneventful** d. informative
- a. valueless** b. resourceful c. essential d. surprising

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

- a. agent b. engine c. regard d. surgeon

2. a. stack b. slash c. swamp d. stamp
3. a. fluoride b. lid c. arid d. hidden
4. a. frightened b. stamped c. walked d. laughed
5. a. hands b. occasions c. associates d. others

III. Complete the sentences with the words in the box

accommodate	climate	explore	mission	orbit
oxygen	planet	spaceship	spacesuit	surface

1. Scientists think it is possible to send humans on a _____ to Mars by the 20130s.
2. James Kirk is the captain of the _____ called Enterprise.
3. Jupiter is the largest _____ in the solar system. Its diameter is more than 11 times the diameter of Earth.
4. The astronaut wears a _____ to protect him from the dangers of being outside in space.
5. Do you know that it takes only 88 Earth days for Mercury to _____ the Sun once?
6. The biggest problem for humans to live in other planets is lack of _____ and water.
7. Since the early 1960's, dozens of spacecraft have been sent to _____ Mars.
8. NASA decided to _____ a rocket from Cape Canaveral at the end of this year.
9. It's impossible for people to live on Venus because the _____ there is unsuitable for human life.
10. They have found a planet that could _____ half of Earth's population.

IV. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences

1. Many astronauts said that it was _____ to see the Earth from space. (WONDER)
2. Oxygen is essential for the _____ of all plants and animals, whether they live on the land or in the water. (SURVIVE)
3. Astronauts who are orbiting the Earth often experience sensation of _____. (WEIGHT)
4. John Harrison is a space _____ who wants to destroy Earth. (TERROR)
5. WWF is committed to saving _____ animals such as black rhino, leatherback turtle and saola.
6. UFO, which means flying saucer, is the abbreviation for _____ Flying Object. (IDENTIFY)
7. 95% of the atmosphere on Mars is carbon dioxide, which is _____ to breath. (POISON)

8. NASA has found out that Kepler-62e has some_____to Earth. (SIMILAR)
9. Do you think astronauts feel a great sense of_____when they travel alone in space? (LONELY)
10. NASA scientists believe the_____of alien life is not that far away from Earth. (EXIST)

V. Choose the word given in the box to complete the passage.

The Moon

The Moon revolves once on its_____each time it orbits the Earth, thus always presenting the same face to earthbound observers._____even to the unaided eye this unchanging face shows two contrasting_____of landscape dark, plain-like _____of low relief, and brighter, decidedly more rugged regions which _____about two-thirds of the_____. Early, astronomers mistakenly_____to the smooth dark areas as marine (or seas), giving the_____terrace (or land) to the bright upland regions. The_____have persisted since, even though the Moon's surface has long been known to be_____waterless.

VI. Read this story and fill in each gap with a suitable word below.

spend	named	temperature	underground
dark	breathe	surface	smaller

LIFE ON NEPTUNE

Hi. We are from Neptune, the eighth planet from the Sun in the Solar System. Our planet is (1) _____after the Roman god of the sea. The climate here is very unfriendly, with a (2) _____ of around -300 degrees Celsius, and the winds are very strong. Actually, we have a lot of storms here. Everything is freezing on the (3) _____of Neptune, so of course we don't have liquid water. To be able to survive here, we have to build all of our cities (4)_____, a hundred kilometers beneath the surface. Luckily, we don't have Neptune-quakes!

Our life here is very different from your life on earth. Because it's extremely (5) _____ underground, we have a very good lighting system on round the clock. Everyday we need only three hours for sleep, four hours for work, and the rest of the day we (6)_____on our leisure activities. So life is relaxing. Most of us like traveling to new cities for new experiences. Although we are (7)_____than you in size, we can move very fast. In fact, we have wings, so we can fly. Thus, we don't suffer heavy traffic like on your earth. We don't (8)_____oxygen either, but we live on hydrogen.

VII. Read the text and decide if the statements are T(true) or F(false)

Long ago, people thought the Moon was a god and we would never be able to reach it. However, the invention of telescopes in 1608 enabled people to learn that the Moon is just another planetary body. And mankind's dream of walking on the Moon suddenly seemed possible.

The dream came true on July 20th, 1969 when Neil Armstrong, Buzz Aldrin, and Michael Collins flew to the Moon as part of the Apollo 11 lunar mission. Neil Armstrong was the first to step onto the Moon. After admiring the tranquil, desolate beauty of the Moon's

surface, Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin completed their mission, while Collins stayed in orbit to maintain the systems on board the spacecraft.

During the stay of more than twenty-one hours on the Moon's surface, the astronauts found no rain or wind at all. The Moon was like a desert with plains, mountains, and valleys. The surface was covered with dust, which was so thick that they left footprints where they had walked. They left a United States of America flag there and return to Earth with forty-six pounds of moon rock for scientific study.

1. People have known all about the Moon for thousands years
2. The invention of telescopes helped people to understand that the Moon is not a god.
3. Only Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin stepped onto the Moon.
4. The climate on the Moon was unfriendly, with a lot of rain and wind.
5. The astronauts stayed on the Moon for nearly one day.
6. They brought back dirt and rocks as souvenirs.

VIII. Turn these sentences into reported speech

1. "What subject do you find the most difficult?" My mother asked.
My mother asked_____.
2. "Please repeat what you have said," she asked John.
She asked John_____.
3. "Do you speak any other languages?" Mr. Baker asked me.
Mr. Baker asked_____.
4. "Close the door, please! It's very noisy."
She told us_____.
5. "Where can I buy a phone card in this city?" he asked.
He asked me_____.
6. "I think residents from Venus have big eyes and round faces." Sally said.
Sally thought_____.
7. "I believe those aliens can understand all languages humans speak." Jane added.
Jane believed that_____.
8. "How can the people from Venus travel around?" Tom asked.
Tom asked_____.
9. "How do you think people on Venus communicate?" Edward asked his friend.
Edward asked his friend_____.
10. "Will those people become good friends with humans?" Nick asked his teacher.
Nick asked his teacher_____.

IX. Turn these sentences into direct speech from reported speech.

1. The boss asked me how many languages I could speak.
_____.
2. My friends wanted to know if he would stay there with me some more days.
_____.
3. I wondered if they were going to build a new school in that area the following year.
_____.
4. They wanted to discover what made the new land different from others.
_____.
5. People wondered why the security of the earth would be threatened.

- _____.
6. We asked the aliens which cities they would visit the following month.
- _____.
7. Hoa asked me whether I had been leaving the spaceship at 3 o'clock the day before.
- _____.
8. The reporter wanted to know why I hadn't taken a picture when I had seen the UFO.
- _____.
9. I asked Ms Gray if she could speak Martian language.
- _____.
10. She asked Mr Armstrong how long he had worked on space projects.
- _____.

X. . Imagine you have been to the Moon and met a resident of it. Write a letter to your friend and describe the person you met.

Dear Dean,

It's great to know that you travelled to Mars during your summer vacation. We also had a memorable time on the Moon. We were lucky to meet some of the residents there. They are

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Hope to see you soon to show you the pictures we took there.

Love,
Tom

KEY

LIFE ON OTHER PLANETS (Unit 12)

A. NEW WORDS, STRUCTURES AND GRAMMAR

I. New words

accommodate(v) accommodation(n))	/ə'kɒmədeɪt/ /ə'kɒmə'deɪʃ(ə) n/	c/cấp nơi ăn ở chỗ ăn ở	UFO <i>Unidentified Flying Object</i>		vật thể bay không xác định
adventure(n) adventurer(n)	/əd'ventʃə/ /əd'ventʃ(ə)rə/	cuộc phiêu lưu người phiêu lưu	space buggy(n)	/speɪs'bagi/	xe vũ trụ
alien(n)	/'eɪliən/	người ngoài hành tinh	stand(v)	/stand/	chịu đựng
experience(n,v)	/ɪk'spiəriəns/	kinh nghiệm, trải qua	surface(n)	/'sɜːfɪs/	bề mặt
danger(n) dangerous(adj)	/'deɪn(d)ʒə/ /'deɪn(d)ʒ(ə)rəs/ s/	sự nguy hiểm nguy hiểm	trace(n,v)	/treɪs/	dấu vết, truy tìm
flying saucer(n)	/'flaɪɪŋ'səʊsə/	đĩa bay	terrorist(n)	/'tɛrərɪst/	kẻ khủng bố
galaxy(n)	/'galəksi/	dải ngân hà	trek(v,n)	/trek/	du hành. chuyến du hành
Jupiter(n)	/'dʒuːpɪtə/	sao mộc	Saturn(n)	/'sat(ə)n/	sao thổ
Mars(n)	/mɑːz/	sao hỏa	uncontrollably (adv)	/ʌnkən'trəʊl əbli/	không khống chế được
messenger(n)	/'mɛsɪn(d)ʒə/	người đưa tin	Venus(n)	/'viːnəs/	sao kim
Mercury(n)	/'mɜːkjəri/	sao thủy	weightless (adj)	/'weɪtləs/	không trọng lượng
NASA <i>National Aeronautics and Space Administration</i>	/'nasə/	cơ quan hàng không & vũ trụ mỹ	inhabitant(n)	/ɪn'həbɪt(ə)n t/	dân cư, người cư trú
Neptune(n)	/'neɪptjuːn/	sao hải vương	liquid(n)	/'lɪkwɪd/	chất lỏng
outer space(n)	/'aʊtə speɪs/	ngoài vũ trụ	orbit(n,v)	/ɔːbɪt/	quỹ đạo, đưa vào quỹ đạo
poison(n,v) poisonous(adj)	/'pɔɪz(ə)n/ /'pɔɪz(ə)nəs/	chất độc, gây độc độc, có độc	name after(v)	/neɪm'aːftə/	đặt theo tên
commit(v) commitment(n)	/kə'mɪt/ /kə'mɪtm(ə)nt /	cam kết sự cam kết	telescope(n)	/'telɪskəʊp/	kính thiên văn
desolate(v, adj)	/'des(ə)lət/	tàn phá, bị tàn phá	tranquil(adj)	/ˈtræŋkwɪl/	thanh bình, lặng lẽ

leatherback sea turtle (n)	<i>/ˈleðəbæk si: tɜ:tl/</i>	rùa da/luýt	saola(n)	<i>/ˈsaʊla:/</i>	kỳ lân
----------------------------	-----------------------------	-------------	----------	------------------	--------

II. Grammar

1. MAY – MIGHT

– MAY quá khứ là MIGHT diễn đạt sự cho phép, xin phép.

Eg: May I come in?

Mary asked her father whether she might go to the cinema.

– MAY/MIGHT diễn tả khả năng có thể hay không thể xảy ra của một sự việc.

Eg: It may be very cold.

They thought that this result might be true.

– Khi dùng trong câu cảm thán, MAY/MIGHT diễn tả một lời chúc.

Eg: May your trip be wonderful!

– MAY/MIGHT dùng trong mệnh đề theo sau động từ hope (hy vọng) và trust (tin tưởng)

Eg: I hope our plan may be successful.

All of us trust that he might do it.

– MAY/MIGHT thường được dùng trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ sự nhượng bộ.

Eg: He may not have good qualification, but he is hard. (Though he doesn't have good qualification, he is hard)

Try as she might, she could not finish her task on time. (Though she tried hard, she could not finish her task on time.)

– MY/MIGHT được dùng trong mệnh đề trạng ngữ chỉ mục đích. Trong trường hợp này chúng ta cũng có thể dùng CAN/COULD thay cho MAY/MIGHT.

Ví dụ:

Linh practiced English as much as possible so that she might study abroad.

– MIGHT không dùng MAY đôi khi được dùng trong câu để diễn tả một lời trách mắng có tính hờn dỗi.

Eg: You might focus on your exercise when I am correcting it.

2. Reported speech: Questions

Câu hỏi trực tiếp – gián tiếp

* General rules

- Nếu động từ chỉ thời gian ở thì hiện tại thì không cần thay đổi các từ trong câu hỏi gián tiếp.

- Nếu động từ chỉ thời gian ở thì quá khứ thì động từ trong câu hỏi gián tiếp sẽ lùi một bậc về quá khứ.

- Will -> Would

- Shall -> Should

- May -> Might

- **Should, Could, Would, Might, QKDT, QKHTTD** trong câu trực tiếp khi đổi sang gián tiếp thì được giữ nguyên:

- Câu đk loại 2 và 3 không đổi thì ở cả 2 MĐ khi câu trực tiếp khi đổi sang gián tiếp.

- Must -> had to

- Tôi tớ -> Tôi thay đổi cho phù hợp với tình huống

(I -> he/she

You -> I/ me/ they/ them/he/she/him/her

We -> they

Us -> them

My -> his/ her

Your -> my/ their/ his/ her

- Thay @ai c, c tở ch@ @nh, tr¹ng tở ch@ thêi gian v@ n-i chèn

this	->	that
now	->	then
here	->	there
today	->	that day
tomorrow	->	the next day/the following day
yesterday	->	the day before
next week/year...	->	the following week/year...
last week/year	->	the previous week/year...
to come	->	to go
ago	->	before

a. Statements

B1: Bá dÊu :, “ ”

B2: Chñ ng÷ + @éng tở giú thiÖu + (that)

B3: Thay @ai @¹i tở , tñnh tở sê h÷u, tr¹ng tở...cho phĩ hĩp

B4: Thay @ai th^x

(Nôu c@u nãi trùc tiêp lóc nạo còng @óng th^x @éng tở kh@ng thay @ai)

Example: - He says “the train will be late”.

-> He says that the train will be late.

Note: c, ch dñng “say” v@ “tell”.

- “Say” @-ĩc dñng nh- @éng tở giú thiÖu trong mãi tr-êng hĩp trở khi nã cã t@n ng÷ gi, n tiêp v@ @ong tr-ĩc c@u nãi gi, n tiêp th^x “tell” @-ĩc thay th@.

Example: Minh says : “I’m a poor man”.

-> Minh says that he is a poor man.

Minh says to me: “ I’m a poor man”.

-> Minh tells me that he is a poor man.

b. Questions

*. Negative questions:

B1: Bá dÊu :, “ ” , ?

B2: Chñ ng÷ + ask + (that) + if/whetheror not + S + V.....
(say/tell.... -> ask)

(Bá trĩ @éng tở, thay b@ng “if” ho@c “whether ...or not” + S + V)

B3: Thay @ai @¹i tở , tñnh tở sê h÷u, tr¹ng tở...cho phĩ hĩp

B4: Thay @ai th^x

Example: Linda said to me: “Do you like sports?”

-> Linda asked me if I liked sports.

(Linda asked me whether I liked sports or not)

* Wh- question

B1: Bá dÊu :, “ ” , ?

B2: Chñ ng÷ + ask + (that) + Wh- + S + V.....
(say/tell.... ->ask)

(Gi÷ nguy^n tở nghi vÊn + S + V)

B3: Thay @ai @¹i tở , tñnh tở sê h÷u, tr¹ng tở...cho phĩ hĩp

B4: Thay @ai th^x

Example: They ask me “ How did I go there yesterday?”

-> They ask me how I went there the day before

c. Commands

B1: Bá dÊu :, “ ” , “!”

B2: Chñ ng÷ + tell + (not) to-inf

(Sãi say-> tell, muèn lèch sù ta đĩng “ask” hoÆc “beg”, muèn diôn @t mỗnh lỏnh ta đĩng “order” hoÆc “command”)

B3: Thay @æi @i tỗ , tĩnh tỗ sẽ h÷u, tr¹ng tỗ...cho phĩ hĩp

Example: His mother said: “Put on your coat!”

-> His mother told him to put on his coat.

*** Note:**

- Tường thuật hành động lời nói: để tường thuật chính xác các câu hành động lời nói thì cần nắm vững các cấu trúc thường được dùng để diễn tả các chức năng này , ví dụ: lời khuyên, lời đề nghị, lời xin lỗi, lời mời...thì nên sd các cấu trúc phổ biến sau:

+ If I were you I would..., Why don't you..., You should..., You'd better..., It would be a good idea if ..., I advise you to..., How about..., What about..., Let's...

Eg: The doctor said: “You should have a healthy diet”

-> *The doctor advised the patient to have a healthy diet*

+ Các động từ phổ biến thường dùng để tường thuật các lời nói này là:

Order, ask, request, insist on/Prevent/ stop (sb from st/doing st), warn (sb against st/doing st)/Recommend, suggest/Invite/Apologize (to sb for doing st/st)

Compliment (sb on st), congratulate (sb on st), thank (sb for st)

Criticize (sb for st), complain, accuse (sb of doing st)

Refuse to do st/ Deny (doing st), admit/ Regret not to do st/doing st

Promise/ Threaten

III. Pronunciation

Stress in words ending in -full or less

Các phụ tố “-full” hoặc “less” không làm ảnh hưởng đến trọng âm của từ.

Eg: 'beauty – 'beautiful

B. EXERCISES

I. Choose the word in each line that has different stress pattern

- | | | | |
|-------------------------------|--------------------------|-----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. a. continent | b. cinema | c. elephant | d. <u>computer</u> |
| 2. a. receptionist | b. biography | c. disqualify | d. <u>operation</u> |
| 3. a. atmosphere | b. <u>inhabit</u> | c. meaningless | d. powerful |
| 4. a. unsuitable | b. emotionless | c. <u>uneventful</u> | d. informative |
| 5. a. <u>valueless</u> | b. resourceful | c. essential | d. surprising |

II. Find the word which has a different sound in the part underlined. Read the words aloud.

- | | | | |
|---------------------------|---------------------|--------------------|---------------------|
| 1. a. agent | b. engine | c. regard | d. surgeon |
| 2. a. st <u>a</u> ck | b. sl <u>a</u> sh | c. sw <u>a</u> mp | d. st <u>a</u> mp |
| 3. a. fluo <u>r</u> ide | b. l <u>i</u> d | c. a <u>r</u> id | d. h <u>i</u> dden |
| 4. a. frighten <u>e</u> d | b. stamp <u>e</u> d | c. walk <u>e</u> d | d. laugh <u>e</u> d |

5. a. hands b. occasions c. associates d. others
1. a. agent b. engine c. **regard** d. surgeon
2. a. stack b. slash c. **swamp** d. stamp
3. a. **fluoride** b. lid c. arid d. hidden
4. a. **frightened** b. stamped c. walked d. laughed
5. a. hands b. occasions c. **associates** d. others

III. Complete the sentences with the words in the box

accommodate	climate	explore	mission	orbit
oxygen	planet	spaceship	spacesuit	surface

- Scientists think it is possible to send humans on a _____ to Mars by the 20130s.
- James Kirk is the captain of the _____ called Enterprise.
- Jupiter is the largest _____ in the solar system. Its diameter is more than 11 times the diameter of Earth.
- The astronaut wears a _____ to protect him from the dangers of being outside in space.
- Do you know that it takes only 88 Earth days for Mercury to _____ the Sun once?
- The biggest problem for humans to live in other planets is lack of _____ and water.
- Since the early 1960's, dozens of spacecraft have been sent to _____ Mars.
- NASA decided to _____ a rocket from Cape Canaveral at the end of this year.
- It's impossible for people to live on Venus because the _____ there is unsuitable for human life.
- They have found a planet that could _____ half of Earth's population.

1. mission 2. spaceship 3. planet 4. spacesuit 5. orbit
6. oxygen 7. explore 8. launch 9. climate 10. accommodate

IV. Give the correct form of the words given to complete the sentences

- Many astronauts said that it was _____ to see the Earth from space. (WONDER)
- Oxygen is essential for the _____ of all plants and animals, whether they live on the land or in the water. (SURVIVE)
- Astronauts who are orbiting the Earth often experience sensation of _____. (WEIGHT)
- John Harrison is a space _____ who wants to destroy Earth. (TERROR)
- WWF is committed to saving _____ animals such as black rhino, leatherback turtle and saola.
- UFO, which means flying saucer, is the abbreviation for _____ Flying Object. (IDENTIFY)
- 95% of the atmosphere on Mars is carbon dioxide, which is _____ to breath. (POISON)
- NASA has found out that Kepler-62e has some _____ to Earth. (SIMILAR)

9. Do you think astronauts feel a great sense of _____ when they travel alone in space? (LONELY)
 10. NASA scientists believe the _____ of alien life is not that far away from Earth. (EXIST)

1. WONDERFUL 2. SURVIVAL 3. WEIGHTLESSNESS 4. TERRORIST
 5. ENGANGERED 6. UNIDENTIFIED 7. POINONOUS 8.SIMILARITIES9.
 LONELINESS 10.EXISTENCE

V. Choose the word given in the box to complete the passage.

The Moon

The Moon revolves once on its _____ each time it orbits the Earth, thus always presenting the same face to earthbound observers. _____ even to the unaided eye this unchanging face shows two contrasting _____ of landscape dark, plain-like _____ of low relief, and brighter, decidedly more rugged regions which _____ about two-thirds of the _____. Early, astronomers mistakenly _____ to the smooth dark areas as marine (or seas), giving the _____ terrace (or land) to the bright upland regions. The _____ have persisted since, even though the Moon's surface has long been known to be _____ waterless.

1. *axis* 2. *However* 3. *types* 4. *areas* 5. *cover*
 6. *surface* 7. *referred* 8. *name* 9. *terms* 10. *completely*

VI. Read this story and fill in each gap with a suitable word below.

spend	named	temperature	underground
dark	breathe	surface	smaller

LIFE ON NEPTUNE

Hi. We are from Neptune, the eighth planet from the Sun in the Solar System. Our planet is (1) _____ after the Roman god of the sea. The climate here is very unfriendly, with a (2) _____ of around -300 degrees Celsius, and the winds are very strong. Actually, we have a lot of storms here. Everything is freezing on the (3) _____ of Neptune, so of course we don't have liquid water. To be able to survive here, we have to build all of our cities (4) _____, a hundred kilometers beneath the surface. Luckily, we don't have Neptune-quakes!

Our life here is very different from your life on earth. Because it's extremely (5) _____ underground, we have a very good lighting system on round the clock. Everyday we need only three hours for sleep, four hours for work, and the rest of the day we (6) _____ on our leisure activities. So life is relaxing. Most of us like traveling to new cities for new experiences. Although we are (7) _____ than you in size, we can move very fast. In fact, we have wings, so we can fly. Thus, we don't suffer heavy traffic like on your earth. We don't (8) _____ oxygen either, but we live on hydrogen.

1. *named* 2. *temperature* 3. *surface* 4. *underground*
 5. *dark* 6. *spend* 7. *smaller* 8. *breath*

VII. Read the text and decide if the statements are T(true) or F(false)

Long ago, people thought the Moon was a god and we would never be able to reach it. However, the invention of telescopes in 1608 enabled people to learn that the Moon is just another planetary body. And mankind's dream of walking on the Moon suddenly seemed possible.

The dream came true on July 20th, 1969 when Neil Armstrong, Buzz Aldrin, and Michael Collins flew to the Moon as part of the Apollo 11 lunar mission. Neil Armstrong was the first to step onto the Moon. After admiring the tranquil, desolate beauty of the Moon's surface, Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin completed their mission, while Collins stayed in orbit to maintain the systems on board the spacecraft.

During the stay of more than twenty-one hours on the Moon's surface, the astronauts found no rain or wind at all. The Moon was like a desert with plains, mountains, and valleys. The surface was covered with dust, which was so thick that they left footprints where they had walked. They left a United States of America flag there and return to Earth with forty-six pounds of moon rock for scientific study.

7. People have known all about the Moon for thousands years
8. The invention of telescopes helped people to understand that the Moon is not a god.
9. Only Neil Armstrong and Buzz Aldrin stepped onto the Moon.
10. The climate on the Moon was unfriendly, with a lot of rain and wind.
11. The astronauts stayed on the Moon for nearly one day.
12. They brought back dirt and rocks as souvenirs.

1-F 2-T 3-T 4-F 5-T 6-F

VIII. Turn these sentences into reported speech

1. "What subject do you find the most difficult?" My mother asked.
My mother asked _____.
2. "Please repeat what you have said," she asked John.
She asked John _____.
3. "Do you speak any other languages?" Mr. Baker asked me.
Mr. Baker asked _____.
4. "Close the door, please! It's very noisy."
She told us _____.
5. "Where can I buy a phone card in this city?" he asked.
He asked me _____.
6. "I think residents from Venus have big eyes and round faces." Sally said.
Sally thought _____.
7. "I believe those aliens can understand all languages humans speak." Jane added.
Jane believed that _____.
8. "How can the people from Venus travel around?" Tom asked.
Tom asked _____.
9. "How do you think people on Venus communicate?" Edward asked his friend.
Edward asked his friend _____.
10. "Will those people become good friends with humans?" Nick asked his teacher.
Nick asked his teacher _____.

1. *My mother asked me what subject I found the most difficult.*
2. *She asked John to repeat what he had said.*
3. *Mr Barker asked me if I spoke any the language.*
4. *She told us to close the door because it was very noisy.*
5. *He asked me where he could buy a phone card in that city.*
6. *Sally thought residents from Venus had very big eyes and round faces.*
7. *Jane believed that those aliens could understand all languages humans spoke.*
8. *Tom asked how the people from Venus could travel around.*
9. *Edward asked his friends how people on Venus communicated.*
10. *Nick asked his teacher if those people would become good friends with humans.*

IX. Turn these sentences into direct speech from reported speech.

1. The boss asked me how many languages I could speak.
_____.
 2. My friends wanted to know if he would stay there with me some more days.
_____.
 3. I wondered if they were going to build a new school in that area the following year.
_____.
 4. They wanted to discover what made the new land different from others.
_____.
 5. People wondered why the security of the earth would be threatened.
_____.
 6. We asked the aliens which cities they would visit the following month.
_____.
 7. Hoa asked me whether I had been leaving the spaceship at 3 o'clock the day before.
_____.
 8. The reporter wanted to know why I hadn't taken a picture when I had seen the UFO.
_____.
 9. I asked Ms Gray if she could speak Martian language.
_____.
 10. She asked Mr Armstrong how long he had worked on space projects.
_____.
1. *"How many languages can you speak?"*
 2. *"Will he stay here with you some more days?"*
 3. *"Are they going to build a new school in this area next year?"*
 4. *"What makes the new land different from others?"*
 5. *"Why will the security of the earth be threatened?"*
 6. *"Which cities will you visit next month?" we asked the aliens.*
 7. *"Were you leaving the spaceship at 3 o'clock yesterday?" Hoa asked me.*
 8. *"Why didn't you take a picture when you saw the UFO" the reporter asked me.*
 9. *"Can you speak Martian language?" I asked Ms Gray.*
 10. *"How long has he worked on space projects?" she asked Mr. Armstrong.*

X. . Imagine you have been to the Moon and met a resident of it. Write a letter to your friend and describe the person you met.

Dear Dean,

It's great to know that you travelled to Mars during your summer vacation. We also had a memorable time on the Moon. We were lucky to meet some of the residents there. They are

.....
.....
.....
.....
.....
.....

Hope to see you soon to show you the pictures we took there.

Love,

Tom

VII. Writing. Make up sentences using the words and phrases given.

1. Within the last 100 years, deserts have been growing at a frightening speed.
2. People living near the edge of the Gobi Desert will leave their homes if sandstorms are not stopped.
3. A local man said that the mudslide was caused by ground which has been unstable by heavy rainfall.
4. Where were you when the earthquake began yesterday?
5. That was a terrible earthquake but luckily we survived.

